教辅资料站
电子教辅 试卷练习
知识总结 备课资源
扫码关注获取更多学习资料

典中点®

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



六年级英语下

JJ版 按100:1 配赠教师用书

（三年级起点）

内含 名师划重点 基础默写本

经典好题·精妙点拨

荣德基 主编

典中点®

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



六年级 英语

下 （JJ版）

主　　编：荣德基
本册主编：杨　娜　吴晶晶　臧玉岭

吉林教育出版社

微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

目录 CONTENTS

Unit 1 Sports

Lesson 1 Ping-pong and Basketball …… 1

Lesson 2 At the Sports Shop …… 3

Lesson 3 Let's Play! …… 5

Lesson 4 Did You Have Fun? …… 7

Lesson 5 A Basketball Game …… 9

Lesson 6 A Famous Football Player …… 11

Again, Please! (听力专练 读写专练) …… 13

Unit 2 Good Health to You!

Lesson 7 Always Have Breakfast! …… 15

Lesson 8 Always Brush Your Teeth! …… 17

Lesson 9 Eat More Vegetables and Fruit! …… 19

Lesson 10 Exercise …… 21

Lesson 11 Work Hard! …… 23

Lesson 12 Helen Keller …… 25

Again, Please! (听力专练 读写专练) …… 27

Unit 3 What Will You Do This Summer?

Lesson 13 Summer Is Coming! …… 29

Lesson 14 Tomorrow We Will Play …… 31

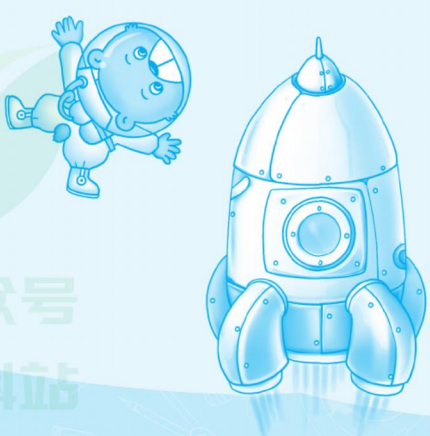
Lesson 15 Jenny's Summer Holiday …… 33

Lesson 16 Li Ming's Summer Holiday …… 35

Lesson 17 Danny's Summer Holiday … 37

Lesson 18 Three Kites in the Sky …… 39

Again, Please! (听力专练 读写专练) …… 41



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 Li Ming Comes Home

Lesson 19 Buying Gifts …… 43

Lesson 20 Looking at Photos …… 45

Lesson 21 A Party for Li Ming …… 47

Lesson 22 Surprise! …… 49

Lesson 23 Good-bye! …… 51

Lesson 24 Danny's Surprise Cake …… 53

Again, Please!(听力专练 读写专练) … 55

期末复习训练

Unit 1 复习训练

知识导图 …… 57

重难点过关检测 …… 58

Unit 2 复习训练

知识导图 …… 60

重难点过关检测 …… 61

Unit 3 复习训练

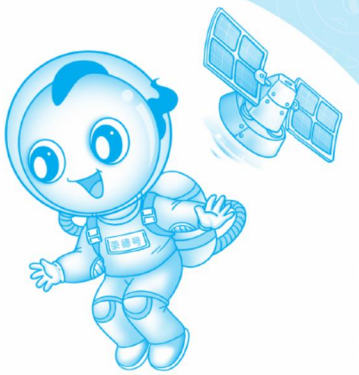
知识导图 …… 63

重难点过关检测 …… 64

Unit 4 复习训练

知识导图 …… 66

重难点过关检测 …… 67



8 开活页部分

Unit 1 过关检测卷 …… 69

Unit 2 过关检测卷 …… 73

期中检测卷 …… 77

Unit 3 过关检测卷 …… 81

Unit 4 过关检测卷 …… 85

期末检测卷 …… 89

参考答案及点拨 …… 93

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

题有千变万化 我有妙法拆招

——本书题型解题方法示例

小学《典中点》英语再度全新升级，为大家带来了解题良方——解题的方法。有方法，解题快，不丢分！更多绝招请大家在书中寻找哦。

书面表达

综合能力题

阅读理解
完形填空
补全对话

八、阅读短文，选出最佳答案。

My name is Tom. Today is Saturday. I have no classes. My parents don't go to work. We eat breakfast at half past six. We eat breakfast every day, because we know it's good for us.

(　　) 1. How often does Tom eat breakfast?

【推理判断法】

A. Six times a week.
B. Seven times a week.
C. Four times a week.



方法点拨：此题用推理判断法。

即通过细读短文，再针对问题返回短文中找出相关的句子，推断出答案。由"We eat breakfast evey day..."可推测出Tom一周吃七次早餐。

句子题

改写句子　句子翻译　句意填空

单项选择题

三、读一读，选择正确的答案。

(　　) 5. There are some ____ in the basket.

【魔法记忆法】

A. tomato and potato
B. tomatos and potatos
C. tomatoes and potatoes

方法点拨：此题用魔法记忆法。

即以-o结尾的名词变复数加-es的有hero，Negro，tomato和potato，即英雄和黑人爱吃西红柿和土豆，记住这个顺口溜即可。

词汇题

一、选出与句中画线单词不同类的一项。

【分类记忆法】

(　　) 1. I like basketball very much.

A. football　　B. sports
C. ping-pong

(　　) 5. I want to drink some water.

A. tea　　B. bananas
C. juice

方法点拨：此题用分类记忆法。

通过细读句子，根据画线单词在句中的类别或词性将单词进行分类。例如：第1小题中画线单词是basketball，是具体的球类，A、C选项都是具体的球类，而B选项是运动的总称，故选B。第5小题中画线单词是water，是液体，A、C选项都是液体，B选项是固体，故选B。

听力题

二、听录音，给图片标序号。

【三步两遍听音法】



(　　)　(　　)　(　　)
(　　)　(　　)

方法点拨：此题用三步两遍听音法。

第一步：看题、看图，弄懂题目要求并猜测听力内容。第二步：第一遍听音，边听边做题，注意捕捉录音中的关键信息，并根据关键信息对图片进行排序。第三步：第二遍听音，边做边检查，得出最后答案。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Sports

Lesson 1 Ping-pong and Basketball ☞(答案见97页)

一、选出与句中画线单词不同类的一项。

【分类记忆法】

( )1. I like basketball very much.
A. football B. sports C. ping-pong

( )2. Can you teach me English?
A. wear B. buy C. favourite

( )3. She is wearing a beautiful dress.
A. clothes B. T-shirt C. shorts

( )4. She likes sports. What about you?
A. we B. them C. him

( )5. I want to drink some water.
A. tea B. bananas C. juice

二、读一读，选一选。

( )1. The boys are playing _____ on the playground.
A. a basketball B. the basketball
C. basketball

( )2. Li Ming can _____ Jenny _____ ping-pong.
A. teaches; to play B. teach; play
C. teach; to play

( )3. Of all sports, my sister likes running _____.
【导学号6124664】
A. well B. best C. good

( )4. —Let's _____ on Sunday!
—OK.
A. going shopping B. go shopping
C. goes shopping

( )5. —I like apples. _____.
—I like bananas.
A. What about you?
B. What would you like?
C. How about him?

三、核心素养练

同学们，有很多英语单词意思相同或相近，但它们的用法是有区别的。some和any是我们常见的两个单词，它们都可以修饰可数名词复数和不可数名词。some用于肯定句以及表示建议的疑问句中，any用于否定句和疑问句中。你会正确使用这两个词吗？下面请把some和any正确地放到句子中。

1. There is _____ water in the bottle. There isn't _____ milk in the cup.
2. I want to buy _____ vegetables.
3. —Do you have _____ apples?
—No, but I have _____ watermelons.
4. —Would you like _____ dumplings?
—No, thanks.
5. —Is there _____ meat on the table?
—Yes, there is _____.

四、选择与图片相符的句子。

( )1. 
A. They play football after class.
B. They play basketball on the playground.

( )2. 
A. I need to buy some ping-pong balls.
B. I need to buy some footballs.

( )3. 
A. This is a T-shirt.
B. These are shorts.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(　　)4. 

A. —What's your favourite sport?
—I like football best.

B. —What's your favourite subject?
—I like English best.

(　　)5. 

A. I am thirsty. Do you have any water?

B. Let's go shopping. I need to buy some sports shoes.

五、给下列问句选择合适的答语。

(　　)1. What sports do you play?

(　　)2. Do you have any basketballs?

(　　)3. Can you teach me to swim?

(　　)4. What do you wear to play football?

(　　)5. What clothes do you like best?

A. I wear my shorts and T-shirt to play football.
B. Yes, I do.
C. I like dresses best.
D. Sure.
E. I play ping-pong and basketball.

六、按要求完成句子。

1. Of all fruit, I like pears best. (改为同义句)

_____

2. There are some books under the bed. (改为一般疑问句)

_____

3. I play football and basketball. (对画线部分提问)

_____

4. wears to play he always shorts basketball (.) (连词成句)

_____

5. want I swim learn to to (.) (连词成句)

_____

七、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

Mr. White is an English man. He teaches English. His English class is very interesting. He likes us and we like him, too. Mr. White has two children—Tom and Lucy. Tom is seven and his sister Lucy is four. Tom goes to school but Lucy doesn't. Mr. White likes to wear a T-shirt and jeans. Football is his favourite sport. After school we have a basketball match. Sometimes Mr. White watches us and joins us. He plays basketball very well.

(　　)1. Mr. White is _____.

A. a Chinese teacher
B. an English language student
C. an English teacher

(　　)2. How many daughters does Mr. White have?

A. One.　　B. Two.　　C. Three.

(　　)3. Lucy doesn't go to school because _____.

A. she looks beautiful
B. she is seven
C. she is only four

(　　)4. Mr. White's favourite sport is _____.

A. basketball　　B. football
C. volleyball

(　　)5. The text is about _____.

A. Mr. White's son　　B. Mr. White
C. Tom and Lucy

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 2 At the Sports Shop ☞(答案见97页)

一、根据图片选词填空。



near far

Look at this picture:

1. The hill is _____.
2. The house is _____.
3. The clouds are _____.
4. The dog is _____ the house.
5. The dog is _____ from the tree.

二、选择正确的单词补全句子。

1. Do you like _____ (this/these) book?
2. Do you have _____ (some/any) T-shirts?
3. —Do you like this ball _____ (and/or) that ball?
   —I like this one.
4. These shoes _____ (is/are) nice.
5. Jenny needs _____ (buy/to buy) some ping-pong balls.

三、读一读，选一选。

( )1. I need _____ T-shirt and _____ shoes.
A. a; any B. some; some
C. a; some

( )2. —Do you like fish or chicken?
—_____
A. Yes, I do. B. I like chicken.
C. I don't like fish.

( )3. —May I use your crayons?
—Sure. _____ 【替代一致法】
A. Here it is. B. Here they are.
C. Here are you.

( )4. I want _____ one.
A. this B. these C. those

( )5. Those _____ are nice. 【主谓一致法】
A. clothes B. bike C. milk

四、情景交际。

( )1. Danny 想去博物馆，但他不知道博物馆在哪里，于是他跑过去问警察叔叔，他应该这样说：
A. Excuse me. Where is the museum?
B. Sorry. Where is the museum?

( )2. 李丹在商场想要买一件蓝色的T恤衫，但她没有找到，服务员这时会这样给她说：
A. I'll take it. B. I'll show you.

( )3. 小明在商店买了几支钢笔，去结账时，他会这样说：
A. How much are those pens?
B. How much are these pens?

( )4. 小朋友们在讨论自己喜欢的水果，但是丽丽既不喜欢苹果也不喜欢橘子，这时丽丽会这样说：
A. I don't like apples or oranges.
B. I don't like apples and oranges.

( )5. 杨宁看到远处一个小男孩正在唱歌，她会这样告诉她的朋友：
A. Look! This boy is dancing.
B. Look! That boy is singing.

五、核心素养练

同学们，我们在本课学习了指示代词this/that/these/those的用法，你学会了吗？下面我们来练一练吧！

根据图片提示及例句仿写句子。

例：—Do you like this T-shirt or that T-shirt?
—I like this T-shirt.
—Do you like these shorts or those shorts?
—I like those shorts.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1.  

_____

2.  

_____

3.  

_____

4.  

_____

六、选择正确的选项补全对话。

Bruce: 1. _____ Do you have any T-shirts?

Salesman: Yes. 2. _____ 3. _____

Bruce: 4. _____ Blue is my favourite.

Salesman: Do you want this one or that one?

Bruce: 5. _____ It looks nice. How much is it?

Salesman: 50 yuan.

Bruce: Okay. I will take it. Here is the money. Thank you.

Salesman: You're welcome. See you next time.

A. What colour do you want?
B. Excuse me. C. I want that one.
D. I want a blue one. E. This way, please.

七、按要求完成句子。

1. Do you like the yellow one? (加上 the white one 将句子改为选择疑问句)

_____

2. Do you like juice or milk? (根据实际情况回答)

_____

3. I have some T-shirts. (改为一般疑问句)

_____

4. man is wearing blue a shirt this (.)(连词成句)

_____

5. dollars balls those are three (.)(连词成句)

_____

八、阅读下面的菜单，选择最佳答案。

Menu	
Sandwiches With chicken $ 5.2 With egg $ 3.6 With beef $ 4.5 With turkey $ 6.5	Drinks Yogurt(酸奶) $ 2.00 Orange juice $ 1.7 Coke $ 2.5 Coffee $ 2.8
Rice Fried rice $ 3.5 With chicken $ 4.8 With beef $ 7.5	Desserts(甜食) Pizza $ 2.5 Banana milk shake $ 3.5 Chocolate $ 5.5

( )1. How many kinds (种类) of sandwiches are there on the menu?
A. Three. B. Four. C. Five.

( )2. You are thirsty, but you only have four dollars. What can you drink?
A. Yogurt and Coke.
B. Orange juice and coffee.
C. Yogurt and orange juice.

( )3. Tony would like a sandwich with turkey and a pizza. How much are they?
A. $ 6.5. B. $ 9.0. C. $ 7.0.

( )4. Which of the following is the most expensive (昂贵的)?
A. A sandwich with beef.
B. Yogurt.
C. Rice with beef.

( )5. You should pay (支付) $ 7.1 for _____.
A. a sandwich with egg and a banana milk shake
B. rice with chicken and chocolate
C. fried rice and yogurt

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 3 Let's Play! ☞(答案见97页)

一、核心素养练

英语中有很多单词是成对出现的，掌握这个规律对我们记忆单词有很大的帮助。读一读，用画线单词的对应词补全句子。

1. I think English is easy, but math is _____.
2. This apple is 0.2kg. It's light. That watermelon is 7.5kg. It's _____.
3. I want to learn to swim. Can you _____ me?
4. Li Ming throws the basketball to Danny? Can Danny _____ it?
5. I want these shoes. I don't like _____ shoes.

二、读一读，选一选。

( )1. Li Ming hits the ball, but Danny _____ his hand.

A. to hit B. hits C. hit

( )2. We are ready to _____ an English class.

A. has B. having C. have

( )3. This cap is _____ small for me. And it's small for her, _____.

【形近词辨析法】

A. to; to B. too; too C. too; to

( )4. Danny thinks basketball is too hard. (选出能替换画线部分的选项)

A. easy B. heavy C. difficult

( )5. —Can you play ping-pong?

—No, but _____.

A. let me try B. I can

C. it is difficult

三、用所给单词的正确形式填空。

1. My father _____ (play) football every day.
2. He is _____ (hit) the ball.
3. I have two _____ (hand) and I write with my right _____ (hand).
4. He doesn't _____ (learn) English.
5. Are you ready _____ (learn) _____ (ride) a bike?

四、根据图片选择合适的句子补全对话。

1. 

A: Can you teach me to fly a kite?

B: _____

2. 

A. Come and swim with us.

B: _____

3. 

A: Are you ready to skate?

B: _____

4. 

A: Throw the ball, please.

B: _____

A. Oh, I can't. The ball is too heavy.

B. Yes. Let's go.

C. Sure. It's easy.

D. No, it's difficult. I can't.

五、把下列句子按顺序排成一段对话。

( )I'm sorry. I can't play ping-pong.

( )Okay. Let's go shopping.

(1)Can you go with me to play ping-pong?

( )Yes. Can you teach me to play ping-pong?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(　　) But I don't have ping-pong balls.

(　　) We can buy some ping-pong balls at the shop.

(　　) OK. I'll teach you.

(　　) Do you want to learn?

六、连词成句。

1. ready his Mr. Li for lesson is(.)

_____

2. watch after he to TV dinner wants(.)

_____

3. schoolbag is heavy too my(.)

_____

4. throwing a to his he friend is ball(.)

_____

5. there book his hand in is a(?)

_____

七、根据短文内容，判断句子正(T)误(F)。

I am a student. I like sports. I run every morning and I swim twice a week(一周两次). I like all kinds of ball games. I like football, basketball, volleyball, tennis and ping-pong. I am good at playing ping-pong. I often play ping-pong with my friend, Li Lei. We are on the school team. But he doesn't like any other ball games. He likes to collect(收集) balls. He has a great collection(一批物品) of balls. He has 60 footballs, 16 volleyballs and many ping-pong balls. We like to watch sports on TV.

(　　)1. I run every morning.

(　　)2. I go swimming once a week.

(　　)3. My friend Li Lei and I like ping-pong.

(　　)4. Li Lei likes all ball games.

(　　)5. We never watch sports on TV.

八、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

【导学号 6124664】

John lives in a tall building in Beijing. There are eighteen floors in the building, and he lives on the fifteenth floor. He uses a lift(电梯) to go up and down.

John works very hard. He goes to work early. Every day he gets out of the lift. Then he walks to a bus stop. It is about two hundred metres from his home.

He usually catches the number 11 bus to work. John works in a factory about ten kilomtres from his home. He starts working at 8:30 a. m., and finishes at 4:30 p. m. He gets back home at 5:15 p. m. He gets into the lift, and he goes up to the twelfth floor. Then he gets out of the lift and climbs up to the fifteenth floor.

(　　)1. John is in _____.

A. the US　　B. China　　C. Canada

(　　)2. He lives on _____.

A. the eighteenth floor

B. the twelfth floor

C. the fifteenth floor

(　　)3. John usually goes to work _____.

A. by bus　　B. on foot

C. by train

(　　)4. He works for _____.

A. seven hours　　B. six hours

C. eight hours

(　　)5. How many floors does John walk up?

A. Twelve floors.　　B. Three floors.

C. The twelfth floor.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 4 Did You Have Fun? ☞(答案见98页)

一、选出与所给单词同类的一项。

( )1. walked
A. go B. teach C. bought

( )2. throw
A. easy B. heavy C. hit

( )3. player
A. teacher B. hand C. difficult

( )4. light
A. any B. easy C. wear

( )5. hand
A. learn B. catch C. mouth

二、读一读，选一选。

( )1. My mother often _____ at seven o'clock. But this morning she _____ at six thirty.
A. gets up; gets up B. gets up; got up
C. got up; gets up

( )2. I taught Bruce _____ and _____ the ball. 【导学号6124664】
A. to throw; catch B. throw; catch
C. to throw; caught

( )3. —What did you do yesterday?
—_____.
A. I went to a shop
B. I am going to a bookshop
C. I see a film with my mother

( )4. Danny thought the ball _____ heavy. 【时态一致法】
A. is B. was C. were

( )5. We should(应该) help _____.
A. each other B. each others
C. other each

三、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. Last Sunday, I _____ (eat) a big watermelon.
2. Danny thought Chinese _____ (be) difficult.
3. Linda often _____ (see) Shelly, but she _____ (see) Mr. Li yesterday.
4. Did you _____ (have) fun last night?
5. My brother is a good basketball _____ (play).

四、核心素养练

同学们，我们学习英语的目的是为了使用。我们知道一般过去时是用于描述过去某个时间发生的动作或状态，你学会了吗？请根据图片，描述Jony一家人上周末都做了什么。

1. 
What did Jony's mother do?
_____

2. 
What did his father do?
_____

3. 
What did his grandfather do?
_____

4. 
What did Jony do?
_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

5. 

What did his brother do?

_____

五、按要求完成句子。

1. Li Ming goes to school by bus. (用 yesterday 改写句子)

Li Ming _____ to school by bus _____.

2. We played basketball last Sunday. (改为一般疑问句)

_____ you _____ basketball last Sunday?

3. I taught Danny to fly a kite. (改为否定句)

I _____ _____ Danny to fly a kite.

4. Did Jenny learn to play ping-pong? (作出否定回答)

No, _____ _____.

5. ate bread for breakfast he (.) (连词成句)

_____

六、根据短文内容，补全句子。

Last Sunday morning, Tom and Henry went swimming in a swimming pool. They went there by bus. It was very hot. But they had fun in the swimming pool.

In the afternoon, they played sports. They taught each other a sport. They were thirsty. There was a small shop near them. So Henry went to the shop and bought two bottles of juice. How happy they were!

1. Tom went to the swimming pool _____ Henry.
2. They _____ _____ and had fun in the swimming pool.
3. They _____ each other a sport.
4. A small _____ was near them.
5. Henry went to the shop and _____ two bottles of juice.

七、阅读理解。

Hello! My name is Kim. I'm from the U. S. I am a tall girl. I like basketball best. I often play basketball with my friends on the playground. We have two teams—the White Team and the Yellow Team. Each team has five players. I am on the Yellow Team. My favourite basketball player is Yao Ming. I want to be a basketball player like him.

(一)根据短文内容判断正(T)误(F)。

( )1. Kim is from China.

( )2. Kim likes basketball best.

( )3. They often play basketball in the gym.

( )4. Kim is on the White Team.

( )5. Kim wants to be a basketball player like Yao Ming.

(二)根据短文内容，回答下列问题。

1. Is Kim a tall girl?

_____

2. How many players are there on a team?

_____

3. Who's Kim's favourite basketball player?

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 5 A Basketball Game ☞(答案见98页)

一、核心素养练

把握读音规则，掌握单词拼读技巧。读一读，找出句中与所给单词画线部分发音相同的单词，然后再写出一个与例词画线部分发音相同的单词。

1. English is easy and fun.

   team: _____ _____

2. Danny hurts his arm! Poor Danny!

   hard: _____ _____

3. Jenny likes to play basketball.

   fast _____ _____

4. These questions are difficult.

   hit _____ _____

5. It was a very good game.

   take _____ _____

二、读一读，根据句子意思、图片、首字母及括号中所给提示，补全句子。

1. The teacher asks a question. The little girl is ready to a_____ it.



2. There is a football g_____ on the playground.



3. I want to be a p_____ in the future.



4. After class, my classmates like to _____(s a k) our teacher questions.



5. "Thank you _____(e r v y) much," says Jenny.

三、读一读，选一选。

(　　)1. We watch Tim _____ basketball.

A. play　　B. to play　　C. played

(　　)2. Everyone played _____.

A. hard　　B. hardly　　C. easy

(　　)3. My favourite sport is _____.

A. playing the basketball

B. playing basketball

C. play basketball

(　　)4. I always play football _____ Sundays.

A. in　　B. on　　C. at

(　　)5. —_____ team lost the game?

—The Blue Team.

A. Who　　B. Which　　C. When

四、选出与句子相符的图片。

(　　)1. Look! The parent is yelling for her children on the playground.

(　　)2. There are some policemen on the street.

(　　)3. This is our team.

(　　)4. He won the first prize in the game.

(　　)5. He is a good player. He plays football well.

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

E. 

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

五、给下列问句选择合适的答语。

( )1. What did you do last night?

( )2. Does he go to school by bus?

( )3. Where did you play basketball?

( )4. Who won?

( )5. Did he have fun?

A. Yes, he does. B. In the gym.
C. Bob's team won. D. Yes, he did.
E. I watched TV.

六、选择合适的单词或短语补全短文，注意使用正确形式。

yell for play with play basketball
do win watch hard Jenny

Bob is a policeman. He is 1. _____ brother. He likes to play basketball. But he 2. _____ not play basketball every day. He 3. _____ for fun on Saturday and Sunday. Last Sunday, Jenny and Li Ming 4. _____ Bob play basketball. Bob's team 5. _____ the Orange Team. Everyone played 6. _____. Jenny and Li Ming 7. _____ Bob's team. At last, Bob's team 8. _____ the game.

七、阅读理解，选择正确答案。

Jenny and Li Ming watched Bob play basketball this evening. They arrived at the gym(体育馆) at 7:30 p. m. Bob's team played with the Orange Team. Everyone played hard! Jenny and Li Ming had fun in the gym. They yelled for Bob's team. Finally, Bob's team won. They were very happy.

( )1. What did Jenny and Li Ming do this evening?
A. They watched Bob play football.
B. They watched Bob play basketball.

( )2. What time did Jenny and Li Ming arrive at the gym?
A. At 7:00 p. m. B. At 7:30 p. m.

( )3. Who won?
A. The Orange Team. B. Bob's team.

( )4. Did Jenny and Li Ming have fun in the gym?
A. Yes, they did. B. No, they didn't.

八、写作技能提升练。

本单元我们主要讨论了运动这一话题。你最喜欢的运动是什么？谁是你最喜欢的运动员？你通常在何时何地做运动？运动时，你喜欢穿什么衣服？用英语来写一写吧！

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

口语能力PK台

根据图片说出短语。

口语测评

1. 

2. 

3. 

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 6 A Famous Football Player ☞(答案见98页)

课内阅读对点练

一、根据课文内容完成以下任务。

(一)根据课文内容,选择正确答案。(教材第12－13页)

(　　)1. Little Pele used _____ as his footballs.
A. cups　　B. footballs
C. boxes and bottles

(　　)2. _____ gave a football to the boy as a gift.
A. Pele's father　　B. Pele's mother
C. A coach

(　　)3. What did Pele do for the coach at Christmas time?
A. He bought a Christmas gift.
B. He planted a Christmas tree.
C. He dug a hole for the coach's Christmas tree.

(　　)4. When was Pele born?
A. In 1958.　B. In 1975.　C. In 1940.

(　　)5. What can you learn from Pele?
A. Work hard and be thankful.
B. Dig a hole.
C. Play with boxes and bottles.

(二)根据课文内容,回答下列问题。

1. When Pele was young, what did he like to do very much?

_____

2. Why did Pele's parents not buy a football for him?

_____

3. Who thought that Pele would be a good player when he was young?

_____

4. How did the coach help Pele when he was young?

_____

拓展阅读提升练

二、阅读短文,完成任务。

The Fox and the Crow

One day, a crow stood on a branch near his nest(鸟窝) and felt very happy. Because there was some meat in his mouth. At that time, a fox saw the crow and the meat, so he swallowed(做吞咽动作) and eagerly found ways to get the meat. But whatever the fox said to the crow, the crow just kept silent(沉默的). At last, the fox got a good idea. He said to the crow, "Your voice(嗓音) is very beautiful. It is the most beautiful in the forest. Can you sing a song to me?" The crow felt flattered and opened his mouth to sing. As soon as the meat fell down to the ground, the fox took the meat and went into his hole(洞穴).

(1)1. Which picture is the story about?

A. 
B. 
C. 
D. 

(2)根据短文内容判断正(T)误(F)。

(　　)2. The crow felt very happy to have some meat in his mouth.

(　　)3. The fox wanted to eat the meat.

(　　)4. At first(最初), the crow didn't say anything to the fox.

(　　)5. When the fox praised(赞美) his

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

voice, the crow felt pleased.

( )6. The fox liked the crow's voice very much.

三、阅读短文，选出正确答案。

"Look, Mum. What a pretty fish! It is a little trout(鳟鱼)," said Scott to his mother. Scott's mother asked, "Where did you get it, Scott?" "Jim caught it from a small river. When I went to the small river to get some water this morning, I saw this little fish. Then I told Jim about the fish, and he ran to get his fishing net. He threw the net into the river and caught it, and then I put it into this glass." "Well, what will you do with it?" asked Scott's mother. "I will keep it, Mum," answered Scott. "But, my boy, it will not live in that glass. You should put it back into the small river," said his mother. Scott felt a little sad. "I wish(希望)I could keep it. It is so pretty. May I keep it?" "No, Scott," said his mum. "You must put it back into the small river. A trout will not live in warm water."

( )1. What kind of fish did Scott find?

A. A golden fish. B. A big fish.

C. A pretty trout.

( )2. Who saw the fish first?

A. Scott. B. Jim.

C. Scott's mother.

( )3. —How did Jim catch the fish?

—By _____.

A. using a net B. hand

C. using a glass

( )4. Why can't the fish live in the glass?

A. Because the glass is not clean.

B. Because the water in the glass is warm.

C. Because the fish can't get food in the glass.

( )5. What do you think will happen next?

A. The fish will live in the glass.

B. The fish will live in the net.

C. The fish will go back to the small river.

四、阅读短文，回答问题。

In China, everyone has a family name. If your name is Li Daming, your family name is Li, and your given name is Daming.

In the UK, everyone has a family name, too. But it's different from our names. If(如果) a girl's name is Lucy Green, her family name is Green, and her given name is Lucy.

Do you know what English family names come from?

First, some family names come from the places(地点) of people's homes. If a man lives on or near a hill, his family name may be Hill. In England, people's family names may be Wood or Lake, because they live near a wood or a lake.

Second, family names come from people's jobs. If a person is a cook, he may be called(被叫做)"_____".

Third, many people get their family names from their fathers' given names. If you hear the name "Jackson", you know that he is the son of Jack.

1. What's the meaning of "given name"?

_____

2. If a person is a cook, he may be called "_____".

3. What do English family names come from?

_____.

4. If a person's name is Jackson, what does the name come from?

_____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Again, Please! ☞(答案见99页)

听力专练

听力专练

一、听录音，给下列图片排序。


( )


( )


( )


( )


( )

二、听录音，选出正确的答语。

( )1. What time will the football game begin?

A. At 2:00 p. m. B. At 2:30 p. m.

C. At 3:00 p. m.

( )2. What clothes does Li Ming wear to play?

A. A T-shirt. B. A coat.

C. Shorts.

( )3. Where did Tom and his friends play basketball?

A. On the playground.

B. In the park.

C. Yesterday morning.

( )4. Is it easy for Danny to fly a kite?

A. Yes, it is. B. No, it isn't.

C. Yes, he can.

( )5. Whose kite can fly high?

A. Jack's. B. Tom's.

C. Lily's.

三、听录音，将人物与对应的运动连线。


Steven




Jack




Joe




Jill



四、听录音，补全短文。

All members of my family are 1. _____ fans(迷). We often watch football 2. _____ on Saturdays and Sundays. Last Sunday, we went to a stadium to watch a game. We 3. _____ fun there. I want to be a football 4. _____ in the future. So I learn to play football 5. _____ hard.

读写专练

五、读一读，写一写，猜一猜。

1. It is a part of our body. We write with it. We hold (拿着)things with it. This is our _____.

2. This is a ball game. There are two teams and each team usually has five players. You get scores(得分) by throwing the ball into your

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

basket. This is a _____ game.

3. This is a ball game. There are two teams and each team has eleven players. You can kick the ball, but you can't use your hands. This is a _____ game.

4. My brother's job is to protect(保护) people, and catch criminals(罪犯). My brother is a _____.

5. 7 × 9 = ? Of the two numbers, 54 and 63, 63 is the _____.

六、读一读，选择正确的词汇写在横线上，补全短文。

sports	a	some	learn to
play	went	taught	

Frank is my good friend. We are in the same class. He likes 1. _____ and he can 2. _____ ping-pong very well. I want to 3. _____ play ping-pong.

So on Sunday morning, I 4. _____ to the shop to buy 5. _____ bat(球拍) and 6. _____ ping-pong balls. In the afternoon, Frank 7. _____ me to play ping-pong. I learned hard, and in the end I could pass the ball to Frank. I felt very happy.

七、根据图片和例句，仿写句子。



例：I have some ping-pong balls.
Do you have any ping-pong balls?

1. 

_____
_____

2. 

_____
_____

八、阅读短文，完成任务。

In China, the Mid-Autumn Festival usually comes in September or October. On that day, people go back home and eat a big meal together. Mooncakes are very popular, and they look like small cakes and they are sweet. Some families like to have their dinner in the open air. At night, they watch the moon together and share the story of Chang'e with the children.

(一)根据短文内容，判断正(T)误(F)。

(　　)1. Rice dumplings are very popular at the Mid-Autumn Festival.

(　　)2. Some families like to have their breakfast in the open air.

(　　)3. They usually enjoy the story of *Three Pigs*.

(　　)4. The Mid-Autumn Festival usually comes in September or October.

(二)请根据短文内容完成下列海报。

The Mid-Autumn Festival

Country: _____

Time: _____

Special food: _____

Things people do: _____

九、认真读表格，根据所给信息写一写上周日大家的一些活动，不少于5句话。

	Tim	Jony	Bob	Helen	Grace
play card games			√		
buy some books	√				
make lunch		√			
teach her brother English					√
see some animals				√	

Last Sunday, _____
_____
_____
_____

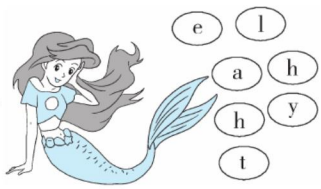
微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

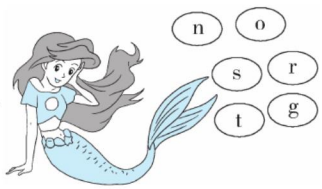
Unit 2 Good Health to You!

Lesson 7 Always Have Breakfast! ☞(答案见99页)

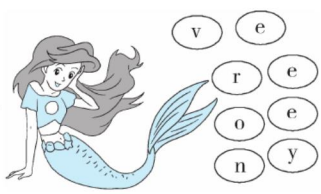
一、你能把美人鱼吐出的字母组成单词并把它们放到合适的句子里吗?

1. 

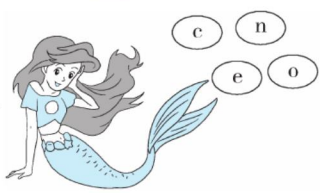
_____

2. 

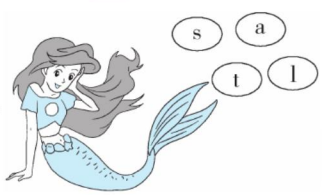
_____

3. 

_____

4. 

_____

5. 

_____

A. I went to the park _____ Sunday.

B. It's eight o'clock. _____ is in the classroom.

C. My brother plays sports every day. He is very _____. 【导学号6124664】

D. Danny had breakfast _____ last week.

E. We need to eat _____ food.

二、读一读,选一选。

( )1. I have _____ at 7:00 in the morning. 【常识法】

A. breakfast B. lunch C. dinner

( )2. I usually go to school _____ seven o'clock _____ the morning.

A. at; on B. at; in C. about; on

( )3. —_____ do you play on the computer?

—Once a week.

A. How many B. How much

C. How often

( )4. I had fun with my friends _____.

A. next week B. tomorrow

C. last week

( )5. Always have breakfast. It's _____ you. 【短语搭配法】

A. good of B. bad for C. good for

三、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. My mother _____ (be) a teacher. I want to _____ (be) a teacher like her.

2. Everyone in our class _____ (like) English.

3. I play ping-pong _____ (one) a week.

4. Kim had breakfast six _____ (time) a week.

5. _____ (do) you watch TV last night?

四、选出与句子相符的图片。 【图文匹配法】

( )1. The man is strong.

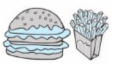
( )2. Vegetables are good for you.

( )3. I always have breakfast.

( )4. He plays football three times a week.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(　　)5. Don't eat too much fast food. It's not healthy.

A. 　B. 　C. 

D.

Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thur.	Fri.	Sat.
						

E.

Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thur.	Fri.
√	√	√	√	√

五、核心素养练

how是一个很常见的特殊疑问词，它还会和一些小伙伴一起组成一个新的特殊疑问词组。在不同的语境里，我们要学会使用不同的特殊疑问词。同学们，请你根据答语，试着写出正确的特殊疑问词。

1. —_____ are these balls?
—They are twenty yuan.
2. —_____ do you eat vegetables?
—I always eat vegetables.
3. —_____ boys are there in your classroom?
—There are 25 boys.
4. —_____ is the weather today?
—It's sunny and warm.
5. —_____ are you?　—I am 13 years old.
6. —_____ is the Great Wall?
—It's more than twenty thousand kilometres long.
7. —_____ is it from Beijing to Shijiazhuang?
—It's 278 kilometres.

六、连词成句。

1. and　we　healthy　are　strong
_____.
2. be　can　healthy　they　how
_____?
3. does　your　cousin　have　breakfast　when
_____?
4. is　good　fish　for　you
_____.
5. Tom　week　seven　breakfast　had　last　times
_____.

七、阅读短文，判断正（T）误（F）。

My name is Sally. I am a girl. My school is far from my home. So I can't go to school by bike. I often go there by bus. I must get up early every morning. I have no time for breakfast at home. I often eat something for breakfast on the way to school. I want to go to school on time(按时).

(　　)1. The school is near Sally's home.
(　　)2. Sally can go to school by bike.
(　　)3. Sally gets up early every day.
(　　)4. Sally has breakfast at home.
(　　)5. Sally wants to go to school on time.

八、下面是Peter, Judy, Lucy, Linda上周吃早餐的情况，根据表格所给信息补全句子。

	Peter	Judy	Lucy	Linda
Sunday	☺		☺	
Monday		☺	☺	
Tuesday	☺		☺	
Wednesday		☺	☺	
Thursday	☺		☺	
Friday	☺	☺	☺	
Saturday	☺		☺	

提示词汇：often　sometimes　always　never

1. Peter had breakfast _____ times last week. He _____ has breakfast.
2. Judy had breakfast three times last week. She _____ has breakfast.
3. Lucy had breakfast on Sunday, _____, _____, _____, _____, Friday and Saturday last week. She _____ has breakfast.
4. Linda _____ has breakfast.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 8 Always Brush Your Teeth!

☞(答案见100页)

一、读一读，选出不同类的单词。

【分类记忆法】

( )1. A. before B. after C. born

( )2. A. brush B. bad C. good

( )3. A. ear B. tooth C. next

( )4. A. week B. math C. English

( )5. A. then B. next C. wash

二、用所给单词的反义词或对应词补全句子。

1. _____ (before) breakfast, I go to school.
2. Candy is _____ (good) for your teeth.
3. Do you _____ (never) wash your hands?
4. Everyone wants to be _____ (ill).
5. He is _____ (weak 虚弱的).

三、根据图片选择合适的短语并用其适当形式补全句子。

have an English class　wash her face
get up　brush his teeth　have breakfast

1. Peter _____ at 6:30.



2. He _____ at 7:00.



3. My brother _____ at 7:00.



4. The girl _____ at 7:10 in the morning.



5. She _____ at 10:00.



四、读一读，选择正确答案。

( )1. I wash my hands _____ breakfast.
A. on　B. before　C. when

( )2. February comes _____ January.
A. after　B. next　C. before

( )3. My sister is 3 years old. She can count (数) _____ one _____ twenty.
A. from; to　B. to; from
C. from; for

( )4. He is ill. He doesn't go to school _____ those days.
A. for　B. on　C. to

( )5. My sister never _____ her teeth.
A. brush　B. brushs　C. brushes

五、核心素养练

了解事物的发展顺序是我们必备的能力之一。我们要能够在阅读中抓住关键信息，如表示顺序的关联词，或根据自己的生活经验等来判断事情的发展顺序。请阅读下列句子，将与句子相匹配的图片序号填入句子前的括号内，并给句子排序，将正确的顺序写在横线上。

Jack is a student of Grade Six. This is his busy day.

( )Next he has breakfast.

( )In the morning, he has four classes.

( )He has lunch at school with his friend.

( )First, he gets up and puts on his clothes at about 7:00.

( )After lunch, he has two classes.

( )Before dinner, he does his homework.

( )Then he goes to school by bus.

( )After dinner, he watches TV with his parents.

A. 

B. 

C. 

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

D. 

E. 

F. 

G.

English class
Math class
Music class
Chinese class

H.

P. E.
Science class

正确的顺序为：_____

六、选词填空。

with to from up on about at

My name is Kelly. I am from Canada. Now I am a student in China. I live 1. _____ my parents. My mother is a teacher 2. _____ No. 7 Middle School. I study in the same school. Every morning, we get 3. _____ at 4. _____ 7:00. After breakfast, we drive 5. _____ school. Because my school is far 6. _____ my home. We don't go to school 7. _____ Saturday or Sunday.

七、请你根据信息卡的内容和所给例句，仿写句子。

My Friday Morning	
Chinese class	8:00
English class	8:50
Science class	10:00
P. E.	10:50

例：After Chinese class, I have English class. Before English class, I have Chinese class.

1. _____

_____

2. _____

_____

八、阅读对话，判断正（T）误（F）。

Mr. Wood: Jenny, what do you do before breakfast?

Jenny: I brush my teeth.

Mr. Wood: Why?

Jenny: Because I want strong and healthy teeth.

Mr. Wood: What do you do after dinner?

Jenny: I do my homework.

Mr. Wood: How often do you play basketball?

Jenny: Three times a week.

(　　)1. Jenny brushes her teeth before breakfast.

(　　)2. Jenny doesn't want strong and healthy teeth.

(　　)3. Jenny does her homework before dinner.

(　　)4. Jenny plays basketball three times a month.

九、阅读短文，判断正（T）误（F）。

Mr. Li is busy every day. He has a big clothes shop. He usually gets up at 6: 00. After brushing his teeth, he does some running. He has breakfast at 6: 30 and takes a bus to his shop at 7:00. The clothes in his shop are cheap(便宜的). So many people go to his shop to buy clothes. He usually has lunch at 11: 30 in the shop. For lunch, he usually eats burgers, salad and oranges. He gets home at about 19: 00. He has dinner with his family—his wife Julia and his daughter Nancy. After dinner, he takes a shower(淋浴). Then he watches TV. He goes to bed at 21:30.

(　　)1. Mr. Li usually gets up at 6: 30.

(　　)2. Many people buy the clothes in his shop because the clothes are cheap.

(　　)3. Mr. Li has lunch at 11: 30 at home.

(　　)4. Mr. Li has dinner with his wife and daughter at home.

(　　)5. Mr. Li watches TV after taking a shower.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 9 Eat More Vegetables and Fruit!

☞(答案见100页)

一、选出可以替换句中画线单词的一项。

( )1. I always go to school on foot.
A. often B. walk C. by

( )2. He has some candy after lunch.
A. never B. before C. from

( )3. Lucy eats fruit every day.
A. vegetables B. times C. has

( )4. Danny eats donuts twice a day.
A. once B. two C. three

( )5. Let's play.
A. run B. running C. runs

二、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. He has a cold(感冒). He needs to _____ (drink) more water.
2. My grandfather likes _____ (go) fishing.
3. There are some _____ (vegetable) and _____ (fruit) on the table.
4. —How often _____ (do) Danny eat donuts?
—Three times a day.
5. What's _____ (she) favourite food?

三、读一读，选择正确的答案。

( )1. I think you need _____ more vegetables.
A. eat B. to eat C. eating

( )2. —How often do you eat donuts?
—_____.
A. One time a day B. Two times a day
C. Three times a day

( )3. An apple a day _____ the doctor _____!
A. keeps; away B. keep; out
C. keeps; in

( )4. I _____ like fish.
A. am not B. doesn't C. don't

( )5. There are some _____ in the basket.
【魔法记忆法】
A. tomato and potato
B. tomatos and potatos
C. tomatoes and potatoes

四、给下列问句选择合适的答语。

( )1. How often do you eat chicken?
( )2. What do you like to eat?
( )3. When do you get up?
( )4. What do you need to do?
( )5. Do you like tomatoes?

A. I need to clean the room.
B. No, I don't.
C. Twice a week.
D. At 6:30 in the morning.
E. I like to eat fruit.

五、核心素养练

同学们，这是一张食物金字塔图。在食物金字塔中，油、糖、盐类位于最顶端，要少食用。下面第二层为奶制品，豆制品，鱼肉蛋类。下面第三层为水果蔬菜类，最底层为五谷类，是我们最不可缺少的。请你根据食物金字塔，判断以下同学的饮食是否健康。如果健康，在下面画☺；如果不健康，在下面画☹。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

	Bob	Linlin	Tom
breakfast	an apple, some bread and milk	noodles and an egg	He doesn't have breakfast.
lunch	vegetables, rice and chicken	a pear and some dumplings	fried chicken and hamburgers
dinner	porridge(粥) and some vegetables	juice, bread and fish	ice cream, donuts and chips
☺ or ☹			

六、按要求完成句子。

1. Amy eats fruit twice a day.(对画线部分提问)

_____

2. Danny likes vegetables very much.(改为否定句)

_____

3. often you run how do a week(连词成句)

_____?

4. like drink to do you what(连词成句)

_____?

5. favourite food is your what(连词成句)

_____?

七、阅读短文,选择正确答案。

Everyone wants to be healthy. You know food is very important to health. There is lots of healthy food. You can have more bananas, apples, oranges and tomatoes. Because fruit and vegetables are good for you. But don't eat too much chocolate. It's not good for you. Healthy food can make you grow and make you strong and happy. There is a saying, "An apple a day keeps the doctor away!" Sports can also keep you healthy.

Get up early and do some sports every day. Don't be lazy. You will be healthy and strong.

( )1. Everyone wants to be _____.

A. angry B. tired C. healthy

( )2. _____ are healthy food.

A. Fruit and chocolate

B. Apples and chocolate

C. Vegetables and fruit

( )3. Eating too much chocolate is _____ for you.

A. good B. bad C. happy

( )4. There is a saying, "_____"

A. An orange a day keeps the doctor away!

B. An apple a day keeps the doctor away!

C. An apple a day keeps the teacher away!

( )5. Besides(除了) healthy food, _____ can also keep you healthy.

A. sports B. books C. tomatoes

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 10 Exercise ☞(答案见100页)

一、根据句意及所给提示，完成句子。



1. _____ is exercise.
2. There are 24 h_____ in a day.
3. Sixty _____ make an hour.
4. _____ (x i s e c r e e) is good for us.
5. —How _____ do you watch TV?
   —Three times a week.

二、读一读，选择正确答案。

(　　)1. I often _____ at 5:30 p. m.
A. walk to home　　B. walk at home
C. walk home

(　　)2. I do my homework for _____ hour every day.　　【导学号6124664】
A. a　　B. an　　C. the

(　　)3. My little brother likes to watch cartoons _____.
A. on TV　　B. from TV　　C. by TV

(　　)4. How many _____ are you going to stay in Beijing?
A. days　　B. day　　C. week

三、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. _____ (eat) vegetables is good for our health.
2. Exercise helps _____ (make) our bodies healthy and strong.
3. I walk to school _____ (two) a day.
4. How many _____ (month) are there in a year?
5. He is going to _____ (visit) Beijing next week.

四、情景交际。

(　　)1. 你想告诉朋友锻炼对我们的身体有益，你可以这样说：
A. Exercise is good for our bodies.
B. Exercise is bad for you.
C. Exercise makes me sad.

(　　)2. 你想知道别人能看到多少辆小汽车时，你可以这样问：
A. How much is the car?
B. How many cars can you see?
C. I can see five cars.

(　　)3. 你想知道朋友一周去几次图书馆，你可以这样问：
A. When do you go to the library?
B. How do you go to the library?
C. How often do you go to the library?

(　　)4. 你想告诉朋友必须做运动来锻炼，你可以说：
A. You have to play sports for exercise.
B. You can watch more sports for exercise.
C. You can watch TV for exercise.

(　　)5. 锻炼很重要，你想告诉朋友我们每天需要一小时的锻炼，你可以这样说：
A. We need one minute of exercise a day.
B. We need an hour of exercise a day.
C. We need 60 seconds of exercise a day.

五、根据图片，仿照示例完成句子。



He is playing basketball.
Playing basketball is exercise.



1. _____
   _____



2. _____
   _____



3. _____
   _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

六、选择合适的一项补全对话。

A: Do you want to have a strong body?

B: Yes, I do.

A: You must do some exercise every day.

1. _____

B: About seventy minutes a week.

A: You need an hour of exercise a day.

2. _____

B: I often exercise twice a week.

A: You'd better exercise every day.

3. _____

B: I like basketball best.

A: Do you like ping-pong?

B: 4. _____

A: I like ping-pong, too. 5. _____

B: OK.

A. What sport do you like best?

B. How many minutes do you exercise a week?

C. Yes, I do.

D. Let's go to play ping-pong.

E. How often do you exercise a week?

七、核心素养练

同学们,你们现在正是长身体的时候,拥有健康的身体会让你受益终身。怎样才能拥有强健的身体呢?请你根据以下图片,给你的朋友们提一些建议吧!

1. 

2. 

3. 

4.

	Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thur.	Fri.	Sat.
Breakfast	√	√	√	√	√	√	√

How can you be healthy and strong? Here are some tips for you.

_____

_____

_____

八、阅读短文,选出最佳答案。

My name is Tom. Today is Saturday. I have no classes. My parents don't go to work. We eat breakfast at half past six. We eat breakfast every day, because we know it's good for us. We always eat vegetables. We eat vegetables twice a day. I like to eat tomatoes. My father likes to eat tomatoes, too. My mother likes potatoes. We often do exercise, because exercise helps make our bodies healthy and strong. I always walk to school. That's twenty minutes a day. My parents like to go for a walk after supper. They walk about thirty minutes a day. This afternoon, I will go to play football with my friends. We need more exercise to be strong and healthy.

( )1. How often does Tom eat breakfast? 【推理判断法】

A. Six times a week.

B. Seven times a week.

C. Four times a week.

( )2. What time do they have breakfast?

A. At 7:00. B. At 6:30. C. At 6:00.

( )3. What do they like to eat?

A. Bread and fish. B. Vegetables.

C. Meat.

( )4. How does Tom go to school?

A. By bus. B. On foot. C. By bike.

( )5. What will Tom do this afternoon?

A. He will go for a walk.

B. He will walk to school.

C. He will play football with his friends.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 11 Work Hard! ☞(答案见100页)

一、核心素养练

把握读音规则，掌握单词的拼读技巧有助于我们记忆单词。读一读，选出与例词画线部分发音相同的单词。

( )1. h<u>ea</u>lthy
A. great B. teach C. sweater

( )2. b<u>a</u>d
A. make B. have C. game

( )3. br<u>u</u>sh
A. hungry B. use C. Tuesday

( )4. h<u>i</u>gh
A. hour B. how C. what

( )5. l<u>ow</u>
A. flower B. cow C. slow

二、选词填空。

with at after on for

1. I like to play basketball _____ my friends.
2. He often does his homework _____ dinner.
3. We go to the library _____ Sundays.
4. What else do you do _____ home?
5. Jenny always walks _____ an hour every day.

三、从括号中选择合适的单词填空。

1. What _____ (else/other) do you do at home?
2. Does she _____ (help/helps) her family?
3. How often do they do _____ (your/their) homework?
4. She always _____ (make/makes) her lunch.
5. I don't go to school _____ (on/in) Saturday and Sunday.

四、单项选择。

( )1. Do you help your mother _____ some housework?
A. do B. does C. doing

( )2. —_____ did you go last Sunday?
—I went to the library.
A. What else B. Who else
C. Where else

( )3. He is never late for school. He always gets to school _____.
A. on time B. late C. low

( )4. Do you think it's important _____?
A. read books B. reading books
C. to read books

( )5. Kim cleans her bedrooms _____ about 20 minutes _____ Saturdays.
A. at; at B. for; for C. for; on

五、给下列问句选择正确的答语。

( )1. How often do you exercise?
( )2. Does Kim work hard at school?
( )3. What do you always do at home?
( )4. Who often helps Mum at home?
( )5. When do you do the housework?

A. Jenny often helps Mum at home.
B. I exercise once a day.
C. On Sundays. D. Yes, she does.
E. I always do my homework and help my parents.

六、这是Lily的一天，根据图片和提示写出对应的短语，补全短文。

I'm Lily. I am in Grade Six. I work hard at school, at home and at sports. I always go to school 1. _____ (按时). I 2. _____



in the evening. I often help 3. _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

 and 4. _____  at home.

Sometimes I 5. _____  . I

6. _____  every day. On weekends

I 7. _____  with my friend. We

8. _____ (玩得开心) together.

七、连词成句。

1. make always I my lunch

_____.

2. do you friends your help school at

_____?

3. can high jump he very

_____.

4. important to it do is exercise

_____.

5. Danny does at hard sports work

_____?

八、阅读短文，回答问题。

It is good for you to do some housework. Some people think students needn't do any housework. I don't think so.

There are three reasons(原因).

First, doing some housework can help make you independent(独立). You can't depend on(依靠) others all your life.

Second, doing some housework can keep you healthy and strong.

At last, doing some housework can reduce(减少) your parents' work. They will be happy.

So I think it is good for students to do some housework.

( )1. How many reasons are there in this passage(文章)?

A. Three. B. Four. C. Two.

( )2. Doing some housework is _____ for students.

A. bad B. happy C. good

( )3. _____ can help make you independent.

A. Doing some housework

B. Doing your homework

C. Doing exercise

( )4. If you help your parents do some housework, they will be _____.

A. tired B. happy C. sad

九、写作技能提升练。

通过本单元的学习我们知道了健康的重要性。你的生活是健康的吗？我们应该如何保持健康呢？说说你是怎样做的吧！

_____

_____

_____

口语能力PK台

一、看图说短语。

口语测评

1.  2. 

3.  4.  5. 

二、大声朗读下列句子并作出回答。

1. Do you always have breakfast?
2. How often do you brush your teeth?
3. What else do you do at home?
4. How many minutes do you exercise?
5. Do you work hard at home?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 12 Helen Keller ☞(答案见101页)

课内阅读对点练

一、根据课文内容完成以下任务。(教材第30—31页)

(一)将下列句子按正确的顺序排列。

(　　) When she was 20 years old, she went to university.

(　　) Her teacher wrote the word "water" on her hand and she got it.

(　　) Helen Keller became deaf and blind when she was 19 months old.

(　　) Helen Keller became a great writer.

(　　) One of her famous books is *The Story of My Life*.

(　　) Her parents didn' t know how to help her.

(二)根据课文内容,选择正确答案。

(　　)1. Helen Keller is a famous _____.

A. doctor　　B. teacher　　C. writer

(　　)2. _____ is Helen Keller's famous book.

A. *The Old Man and the Sea*

B. *The Story of My Life*

C. *War and Peace*

(　　)3. _____, Helen Keller went to university.

A. In 1900　　B. In 1887　　C. In 1880

(　　)4. When Helen Keller was 19 months old, she became _____.

A. beautiful　　B. strong

C. blind and deaf

(　　)5. "_____" is the first word Helen learned.

A. Love　　B. Water　　C. Help

(三)根据课文内容,回答下列问题。

1. When and where was Helen Keller born?

_____

2. Did Helen's parents know how to help her?

_____

3. Who helped Helen Keller at last?

_____

4. How did Helen's teacher help her?

_____

5. What can you learn from Helen Keller?

_____

拓展阅读提升练

二、阅读短文,完成任务。

What Are They Doing for Holiday?

They are happy because they are on holiday (度假).

Mary is visiting her aunt in Paris. She is very excited to be in Paris. It is a very famous city. And it is a good place to go shopping.

Tom is fishing on the lake. Because there are so many fish in the lake. Tom is having a good harvest(收获量).

Simon and Bill are good friends. They are usually very busy (忙碌的) with their studies every day, so they want to do something different. They are going for a bike ride together in the beautiful countryside. It's relaxing(令人放松的).

Jesse is taking some pictures in the park. The park is very beautiful in autumn, and it's a good place to take pictures.

Everyone gets tired sometimes. It's important to have a good rest(好好休息). And it's good for

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

your health. It can help you work or study better, too. I hope everyone is having a good time.

What Are They Doing for 1. _____?		
Names	Places	What are they doing?
Mary	Paris	She is 2. _____.
3. _____	the lake	He is fishing.
Simon and Bill	the countryside	They are 4. _____.
Jesse	5. _____	He is taking pictures.

三、阅读故事，完成以下练习。

There is an old horse and a little horse on a farm. One day, the old horse asks the little horse to send the wheat(小麦) to the mill(磨坊). The little horse is very happy. He carries the wheat and runs toward the mill. But there is a river in front of the little horse. He stops and does not know what to do next. Just then Aunt Cow is passing by(经过).

The little horse asks, "Aunt Cow, please tell me how to cross(穿过) the river."

Aunt Cow answers, "It is not deep(深). You can cross it."

When the little horse begins to cross the river, a little squirrel(松鼠) shouts(喊叫) at him, "Little Horse, don't cross it, you will be drowned(淹死). Yesterday one of my friends was drowned in this river."

The little horse is very afraid. Finally he decides(决定) to go home and ask his mother.

The old horse asks, "Why do you take the wheat back? What's wrong with you, my child?"

The little horse answers sadly, "There is a river in front of me. Aunt Cow said it was not deep. But the little squirrel said it was deep. What shall I do?"

The old horse says, "My child, you should (应该) try to cross the river by yourself. If you do not try(尝试), how do you know the river is deep or not?"

The little horse carries the wheat and returns (返回) to the riverside at last. He succeeds(成功) in crossing the river. Now, he knows how deep the river is.

a. 根据故事内容给下列图片排序。



(　　)　(　　)　(　　)　(　　)

b. 根据故事内容选择正确答案。

(　　)1. What does the old horse ask the little horse to do?

A. She asks the little horse to cross the river.

B. She asks the little horse to carry some grass.

C. She asks the little horse to send the wheat to the mill.

(　　)2. Aunt Cow thinks _____.

A. the river is very deep

B. the little horse can cross the river

C. the little horse should try by himself.

(　　)3. What does the little horse do after hearing the little squirrel's words?

A. He crosses the river.

B. He goes home to ask his mother.

C. He is happy because he knows the river is not deep.

(　　)4. Does the little squirrel tell a lie(撒谎)?

A. Yes, he does.　B. No, he doesn't.

C. I don't know.

(　　)5. What do you learn from the story?

A. When we meet difficulties(困难), we should ask our mothers for help.

B. We should listen to our friends' suggestions(建议).

C. When we meet difficulties, we should try by ourselves.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

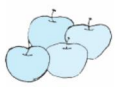
Again, Please! ☞(答案见101页)

听力专练

听力专练

一、听录音，将人物与相应内容连线。

Kim  five times a week

Jane  seven times a week

Dick  six times a week

Linda  four times a week

二、听录音，选出正确的答语。

( )1. A. It's important to be healthy and strong.
B. Always have breakfast.
C. Yes, I can.

( )2. A. I went to the restaurant last week.
B. She had breakfast three times last week.
C. At about 7:30.

( )3. A. Sixty. B. Twelve. C. Seven.

( )4. A. Twice a month. B. Two kilometres.
C. No, I don't.

( )5. A. Yes, she is.
B. She works hard at sports.
C. Yes, she does.

三、听录音，给下列图片排序。

 ( )
 ( )
 ( )
 ( )
 ( )
 ( )

四、听录音，补全短文。

1. _____ helps make our bodies healthy and 2. _____. I run for thirty 3. _____ every morning. Basketball is my favourite sport. I play it three 4. _____ a week. That's an 5. _____ and a half a week. I play football twice a week.

读写专练

五、读一读，根据短文内容用合适的频度副词填空。

My grandfather is 65 years old. He doesn't go to work now. But he is busy. Every morning, he plays *taijiquan* in the park with his old friends. On Monday and Tuesday morning, he goes to learn Peking Opera. On Tuesday, Wednesday, Friday and Saturday, he goes for a walk with my grandmother after supper. He likes to see films. On Sunday afternoon, I go to the cinema with him.

1. My grandfather _____ goes to work now.
2. My grandfather _____ plays *taijiquan* in the morning.
3. My grandfather goes to learn Peking Opera _____ a week.
4. My grandfather _____ goes for a walk with

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

my grandmother after supper.

5. My grandfather goes to the cinema _____ a week.

六、阅读短文,完成任务。

Here are some tips for you to keep healthy.

1. Often go for a walk. Walking is good exercise, and exercise is good for health.
2. Eat breakfast. Breakfast gives you energy (能量) for the whole morning.
3. Get enough sleep at night. A good sleep can make you happy all day long.
4. Drink eight glasses of water every day. Our bodies need water very much. Water helps our bodies in many ways.
5. Take a "time-out" for about 20 minutes after working an hour. Do something different to refresh you (使你恢复精力), and you can work well.

(一)根据短文内容,选择正确答案。

( )1. What is good exercise in Tip 1?

A. Running. B. Walking.

C. Playing football.

( )2. How can you become healthy?

A. Eating a lot of food before going to bed.

B. Drinking enough water every day.

C. Having a short rest every day.

( )3. What can make you work well?

A. A time-out. B Eating. C. Drinking.

( )4. "Time-out" means "_____" in Chinese.

A. 最初时间 B. 暂停 C. 初次

( )5. We need _____ glasses of water every day.

A. eight B. nine C. ten

(二)根据短文内容,回答问题。

1. How many tips are there in the passage?

_____

2. Why do we need to go for a walk?

_____

3. What gives you energy in the morning?

_____

4. Is enough sleep important for our health?

_____

七、阅读下面的广告并填空。

Tess' Gym	Water World
Lose weight(减肥)	Opening time:
$ 25/hour	9:00a. m. —9:00p. m.
Opening time: Saturday	Adults(成人): $ 10
and Sunday	Children: $ 7
Tel: 4556223	Tel: 8736479

Do you like sports? Please come to the Tess' Gym and the 1. _____. The Tess' Gym can help you 2. _____, and the Water World can help you be healthy. If you want to lose weight, you can go to the Tess' Gym on Saturday and 3. _____. Losing weight costs(花费) 4. _____ dollars an hour. But if you want to swim, you can go to the Water World from 5. _____ to 9: 00 p. m. Swimming for children needs 7 dollars once. It is cheap.

八、写作技能提升练。

同学们,你们每天都会做些什么呢? 请以"My Day"为题,写一篇短文。不少于5句话。

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

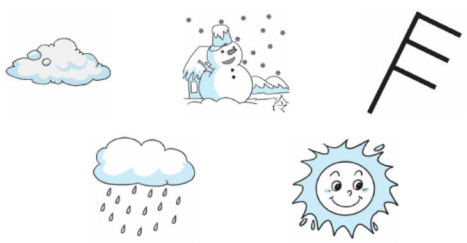
Unit 3 What Will You Do This Summer?

Lesson 13 Summer Is Coming! ☞(答案见101页)

一、核心素养练

同学们,英语中有很多与天气有关的词语,它们之间或多或少有些联系,但它们的用法是有区别的。我们要学会根据不同的语言环境,选择恰当的词汇使用哦。

这是伍德老师课堂上讲季节的一些句子,读一读,根据图片提示(注意,图片顺序与题目不符哦!)选择正确的单词补全句子。



sun sunny cloud cloudy snow
snowy rain rainy wind windy

1. Look at the sun. It's _____ today.
2. I like _____ days in summer. I like the rain.
3. _____ blows the leaves off the trees. It's windy in autumn.
4. In Canada, winter is cold. I like to play in the _____ on snowy days.
5. Look at the black clouds! It's _____ today.

二、读一读,选一选。

( )1. Summer comes after spring. How's the weather in spring?
A. Warm. B. Cold. C. Hot.

( )2. What happens _____ trees in different seasons? 【导学号6124664】
A. for B. at C. to

( )3. Winter is cold! Many trees don't have _____ leaves.
A. some B. any C. a

( )4. In spring, I can _____ some new leaves.
A. watch B. look C. see

( )5. We like _____ in summer.
A. fan B. fans C. to fan

三、花落谁家? (选词填空)

with to in at on

1. I play sports _____ my brother.
2. It's cold _____ December in the north of China.
3. I like _____ swim in the river.
4. Children's Day is _____ June the first.
5. We arrive _____ the train station in the morning.

四、我们在使用英语时,要根据情境,使用恰当而得体的句子。请大家读一读,选出正确的句子吧。

( )1. 当你想知道加拿大夏天的天气时,你最好使用哪句话来问:
A. How's the weather in winter?
B. What's the weather in summer?
C. How's the weather in summer?

( )2. 当你想介绍自己喜欢做的事情时,哪个是你最好的表达方式?
A. I like ride a bike.
B. I like to ride a bike.
C. I like bikes.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(　　)3. 老师问你:What's your favourite season? 你怎么回答?

A. Summer is coming.

B. I like summer best.

C. I don't like summer.

(　　)4. 当你和一个英国人聊天时,你会闲聊什么?下面哪个是最好的选择?

A. Did you have a good trip?

B. Beautiful weather, isn't it?

C. Did you eat something?

(　　)5. 当你和同学聊你的 Summer fun 的时候,你会怎么说:

A. I like to sit in the sun.

B. My friend likes to swim.

C. I like picking apples.

五、补全对话。(只填序号)

Susan: Hello, Linda! Where did you go last summer?

Linda: 1. _____ My grandma lives there.

Susan: Sounds good. 2. _____

Linda: No, I didn't.

Susan: 3. _____

Linda: Because of the bad weather. It always rains.

Susan: 4. _____

Linda: Seven days. And it rained for seven days.

Susan: 5. _____

Linda: How terrible!

A. Oh, poor girl.
B. I went to London.
C. How long did you stay there?
D. Did you have fun there?
E. Why? It's a nice place.

六、阅读短文,完成任务。

Today is the Spring Festival. Ava and her little sister Amy get up early. Ava opens the door. It's all white outside because it snowed yesterday. After breakfast, Ava says, "Oh, dear! It's very nice outside. Let's make a snowman." Making a snowman is not very easy, so they work hard. Amy puts her hat on the snowman's head. After that, they have lunch. Amy says, "It's half past twelve. The snowman must be hungry. Let's give some dumplings to him." "All right!" Ava says. But the snowman isn't there. They can only see the hat. Where is he?

(一)根据短文内容,判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。

(　　)1. Ava puts her hat on the snowman's head.

(　　)2. It's difficult to make a snowman.

(　　)3. Amy wants to give some dumplings to the snowman.

(　　)4. The snowman melts(融化) at last.

(　　)5. The snowman eats dumplings at half past twelve.

(二)根据短文,请你思考并回答下列问题。

What's your favourite season? Why?

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 14 Tomorrow We Will Play

☞(答案见102页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示写出短语，补全句子。

1. I will f_____ next Sunday.



2. Please don't p_____ in the park.



3. Let's p_____ after school.



4. I sometimes l_____ after dinner.



5. I like to r_____ in my study.



二、核心素养练

英语中有很多词是用来表达我们的感受的。其中有很多是对应词，例如 happy—sad。请仿照例子写单词及其相应的对应词。

happy — sad

1. angry — _____
2. _____ — _____
3. _____ — _____
4. _____ — _____
5. _____ — _____

三、火眼金睛，挑出正确的词语补全句子。

1. I'll _____ (angry/be angry) if you do that.
2. Danny will run _____ (to home/home) quickly.
3. It's raining. Please _____ (open/close) the window.
4. I _____ (am/will) go to Harbin. It's too cold.
5. Summer is coming. It _____ (is/will be) hot soon.

四、选择正确的答语完成对话。

( )1. What's your plan for the summer holiday?

A. I am go on a trip to Canada.

B. They will travel to Canada.

C. I will go on a trip to Canada.

( )2. Will you be afraid of the final exam?

A. Yes, you will.

B. No, I'm not.

C. No, I will not.

( )3. How will Li Ming go to Canada?

A. I'll go there take a plane.

B. I'll go there by plane.

C. He'll go there by plane.

( )4. Who will you play with tomorrow?

A. Tomorrow I will play.

B. I will play with my mother.

C. I often play chess with my father.

( )5. You can't write on the Great Wall!

A. It doesn't matter.

B. Sorry. I will not do it.

C. That's OK.

五、想一想，按要求完成句子。

1. Tomorrow I am going to play the guitar. (把主语换成 they)

Tomorrow _____ _____ _____ _____ play the guitar.

2. I will have breakfast next Monday. (改成否定句)

_____

3. What is she going to do? (同义句转换)

What _____ _____ do?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4. He will play football in three days.（对画线部分提问）

What _____ he _____ in three days?

5. don't wet get I to want (.)（连词成句）

_____

六、阅读短文，选择正确的一项。

_____

Tomorrow is June 1st, Children's Day. Daming will have a nice holiday. In the morning, he will go to the park and take pictures with his friends. In the afternoon, he will have some delicious food in a western restaurant with his grandparents, and then he will play with the mobile phone with his brother. In the evening, he will watch a film with his parents at home. He will have a nice day.

(　　)1. The best title（题目）is _____.

A. Children's Day　　B. My Day

C. Daming's Children's Day

(　　)2. Daming will go to _____ places in the daytime.

A. one　　B. two　　C. three

(　　)3. Yesterday was _____.

A. May 30th　B. May 31st　C. June 1st

(　　)4. There are _____ people in Daming's family.

A. six　　B. eight　　C. three

(　　)5. Daming will _____ in the evening.

A. do homework

B. watch TV

C. watch a film

七、根据短文内容，寻找关键信息或概括短文内容补全句子。

For many plants, the life cycle（循环）follows the cycle of four seasons: spring, summer, autumn and winter. For example, a sunflower seed sprouts（发芽）from the ground in spring. The plant grows tall and blooms（开花）in summer. In autumn, once the plant is fully grown, the seeds ripen（成熟）and fall to the ground. In winter, the plant dies. Some seeds will start the sunflower's cycle all over. The next spring, seeds will sprout and new plants will begin to grow.

1. The life cycle follows the cycle of four _____.
2. We have four seasons: spring, summer, autumn and _____.
3. A sunflower seed sprouts from the ground in _____.
4. A sunflower grows tall and blooms in _____.
5. In winter, the sunflower _____.
6. 找出文章中心句并抄写在下面横线上。

_____

_____.

八、请用英语介绍一下你下周日会做什么。注意，开头已经给出。

Next Sunday is Mother's Day. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 15 Jenny's Summer Holiday ☞(答案见 102 页)

一、你能将下列字母组成单词吗?

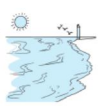
1. a e k l _____
2. w s m i _____
3. h i p s _____
4. h a c b e _____
5. a s w m _____

二、你能根据语境猜出正确的图片吗? 猜一猜,选一选。

( )1. Summer is coming. Sarah will play on the beach. She likes playing on the beach.

A.  B.  C. 

( )2. We can swim in it. In America, some boys and girls like to surf(冲浪) for summer holidays. There are a lot of sea animals in it.

A.  B.  C. 

( )3. This summer, she'll go on a trip to Dalian. She'll watch the ships and boats on the sea.

A.  B.  C. 

( )4. Her favourite season is summer, because she likes to read books and sit in the sun.

A.  B.  C. 

( )5. He doesn't like summer. It's too hot for him to play outside. He has to stay at home and practice(练习) playing the piano for the summer holiday.

A.  B.  C. 

三、读一读,选一选。

( )1. They will go on a trip _____ the summer holiday.

A. with B. for C. to

( )2. My family _____ go on trips in the summer every year.

A. likes to B. liked to C. liking to

( )3. She will watch the ships and boats _____ the sea.

A. of B. on C. out

( )4. When summer is _____, what will you do?

A. do B. did C. done

( )5. She _____ a lake with her parents last summer.

A. goes to B. went to C. will go to

四、核心素养练

同学们,英语中很多单词在使用时要根据语境变换不同的形式来表达特定的含义,比如用动词的不同形式来表达时态概念。就让我们来选一选,变一变吧!

eat visit go swim

A: What will you do for the summer holiday?

B: I 1. _____ to Sanya with my parents. Last summer, I 2. _____ to Beijing to 3. _____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

my grandparents. I 4. _____ in the swimming pool. I 5. _____ my uncle this summer. He lives in Sanya. He will teach me to 6. _____ in the sea. And I 7. _____ delicious food there.

A: That sounds good.

五、同学们，快来补全对话吧（注意有两项多余哦！）。

Lily: Hello, Lisa! Nice weather, isn't it?

Lisa: Yes. Which season do you like best?

Lily: 1. _____

Lisa: Why?

Lily: 2. _____

Lisa: What will you do this summer?

Lily: 3. _____

Lisa: Sounds interesting! 4. _____

Lily: I think so. 5. _____

Lisa: Have a nice trip!

Lily: Thanks a lot.

A. Because I like sunny days. I like to swim in the river.
B. I went to Dalian to eat seafood.
C. How will you go there?
D. Summer is my favourite season.
E. That's an interesting place.
F. I'll go on a trip to Xi'an with my aunt.
G. I'd like to see the Terracotta Warriors.

六、按要求完成句子。

1. Jenny will go on a trip to the sea this summer.（对画线部分提问）

_____

2. I went to the beach on foot.（对画线部分提问）

_____

3. He watches the ships and boats on the sea.（改成一般将来时）

_____

4. We will swim in the sea.（改成现在进行时）

_____

5. for I will summer in be holiday Canada the (.)（连词成句）

_____

七、阅读短文，完成任务。【关键信息匹配法】

Robert takes a backpack（背包）and leaves home for his summer holiday. He takes a boat to a small island（岛）and wants to stay there for two weeks. But three days later, he is back home. His mother asks why.

"On the first day, a goat died, and we had roast mutton（烤羊肉）for dinner," Robert says. "On the second day, a cow died, and we had roast beef for dinner."

"Very good," his mother says.

"On the third day, a farmer died, and we didn't dare（敢）to stay for dinner," Robert says.

(　　)1. Robert leaves home for his _____ holiday.
A. winter　B. autumn　C. summer

(　　)2. Robert returns home _____ later.
A. two weeks　B. three days　C. two days

(　　)3. When a _____ died, Robert had roast mutton for his dinner.
A. cat　B. dog　C. goat

4. When a cow died, Robert had roast _____ for dinner.

5. On the third day, a _____ died.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 16 Li Ming's Summer Holiday ☞(答案见 103 页)

一、读一读，选出与画线单词相反或相似的一项。

( )1. We will fly home next month.
A. by sea B. go home by plane
C. take a plane

( )2. I will feel happy to see China.
A. be B. like C. look

( )3. They will buy some meat.
A. take B. bring C. cook

( )4. Li Ming's summer holiday is very long.
A. big B. short C. tall

( )5. I will meet my friends.
A. watch B. see C. look

二、读一读，根据句意、图片及首字母提示，写出单词或短语，补全句子。

1. —W_____ will Jack go for his summer holiday?
—He will go to Ottawa.

2. —W_____ will you visit in Shanxi?
—My uncle and my aunt.



3. —When will you go to Miami?
—_____.



4. —What place will you visit?
—I will visit _____.



5. —Would you like to come to play _____?
—Yes, I'd love to.

三、读一读，选一选。

( )1. What will Li Ming do _____ the summer holiday?
A. to B. for C. of

( )2. She will fly _____ home.
A. to B. for C. /

( )3. They will _____ you.
A. missing B. miss C. missed

( )4. Can you play badminton with _____?
A. us B. our C. my

( )5. What would you like to do in summer?
A. I would like fish and chips.
B. I'd like to go on trips.
C. I would like him to make his bed.

四、核心素养练

发现或感受事物的发展顺序是我们必备的能力之一。我们要能够在阅读中抓住关键的信息，如表示顺序的关联词，或根据自己的生活经验等来判断事情的前后顺序。请匹配句子与图片内容，并将句子按正确的顺序排一排吧。

【关键词匹配法和时间脉络法】

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

5. 

6. 

( ) I have a plan for the summer holiday. Starting from July 1st, I will do my homework for one and a half weeks.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

( ) I'll stay in the village for two weeks. Then I will go back home to have some music lessons.

( ) About in the middle of July, I will visit my grandparents in a small village in Hunan. The air is fresh there. I'll fly there.

( ) After two weeks' music lessons, I will learn to swim with my friend Mike until September.

( ) What a busy summer holiday! Anyway I will enjoy it.

( ) And then, I will go to Zhangjiakou by train. I will see the grassland there. I'll stay there for six days.

正确排列顺序:_____

五、按要求完成句子。

1. I will buy some seafood. (改成一般疑问句)

_____

2. He is going to listen to music at 9:10 p. m. . (改成否定句)

_____

3. Miss Chang will is a doctor next year. (写出正确的句子)

_____

4. Sarah will call you tomorrow. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ Sarah _____ tomorrow?

5. will home you on fly June 1st (?) (连词成句)

_____

六、阅读短文,完成任务。

_____

Hi! I'm Bella. The summer holiday is coming. First, I am going to go back to my hometown to visit my aunt, my father's sister. She has a big farm there. Then I have to review my lessons, because some of my lessons are bad. I must look at them again. Finally, I plan to go on a trip to Beijing with my parents. Beijing is a big city. It's the capital city of China, and there are many places of interest, such as the Great Wall, the Summer Palace and the Palace Museum. I think I will have a great summer holiday!

( )1. The best title is _____.

A. The Holiday

B. The Summer Holiday

C. The Special Holiday

( )2. Where will Bella go on a trip?

A. Beijing. B. Tianjin. C. Xi'an.

( )3. What is the meaning(意思) of "review"?

A. To look at something again.

B. To look for something new.

C. To read something special.

( )4. Which city is the capital of China?

A. Beijing. B. Ottawa. C. London.

( )5. What are places of interest in Beijing?

a. the Great Wall

b. the Summer Palace

c. the Palace Museum

A. a. b. B. a. b. c. C. b. c.

6. 请将画线部分的句子翻译成汉语。

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 17 Danny's Summer Holiday ☞(答案见103页)

一、核心素养练

把握读音规则,掌握单词拼读技巧。读一读,从句子画线单词中找出含有例词画线部分读音的单词。

1. Mark will go to a summer camp this year.

   ant _____

2. She is a clever student in the class.

   very _____

3. I will fly to China to play with Li Ming.

   cry _____

4. That child is sitting by a river.

   fly kites _____

5. She will cook a great meal with bread.

   heavy _____

二、图文对对碰。

A. play sports	E. send emails
B. make new friends	F. cook a meal
C. go water skiing	G. watch TV
D. go swimming	H. go skating


( )


( )


( )


( )


( )


( )


( )


( )

三、火眼金睛,读一读,选出正确的一项。

1. Last summer holiday, Danny _____ (fish/fished). He _____ (will fish/fishing) this summer.
2. Tom is _____ (going to/will) visit his cousins in five days.
3. Lisa also wants to learn _____ (swim/to swim) in a lake.
4. My grandfather _____ (lives/live) in a small village. He _____ (lives/lived) in the city three years ago.
5. It will _____ (fun/be fun).

四、读一读,选一选。

( )1. What _____ Danny do this Saturday?
A. does B. will C. did

( )2. —Will you learn to fly?
—_____.
A. Yes, I will B. Yes, I do
C. Yes, I am

( )3. It's raining. We _____ go outside.
A. will B. will not C. are not

( )4. What _____ will Danny do this summer? 【导学号6124664】
A. else B. other C. each

( )5. They live near _____ forest.
A. a big very B. very big a
C. a very big

五、读一读,根据文本内容选择恰当的单词填空。

A. January	B. snow	C. skating
D. houses	E. beaches	

I love winter. I love to play in the 1. _____. I like to make snowballs and throw them. Last winter

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

holiday, I went to Harbin. I saw ice 2. _____ and ice animals there. I went 3. _____ on the ice. It was fun. This winter I will go to Sanya and play on the 4. _____. It's not too cold in 5. _____. Maybe I can swim in the sea. I think I will have a great winter holiday.

六、阅读短文，完成任务。

_____

John is a 12-year-old boy. He likes to play football games. Now he is very happy because there is going to be a nice football game on TV at four this afternoon. He wants to watch it very much. But he is going to have English and Chinese lessons. He thinks hard and finds a way.

"Hello, Mrs. Black," John says to his teacher on the phone. "John is ill in bed. He wants to ask for half a day's leave(假)."

"Oh, I'm sorry to hear that," says Mrs. Black. "But who's that?"

"It's my father, Mrs. Black."

( )1. The best title is _____.

A. I Am Ill B. I Am My Father

C. A Football Game

( )2. John is a _____.

A. teacher B. student C. worker

( )3. Why does John want to ask for half a day's leave?

A. He is ill. B. His father is ill.

C. He wants to watch the football game.

( )4. When does the football game start?

A. At 4:00 a. m.. B. At 4:00 p. m..

C. At 5:00 p. m..

5. 请将画线部分的句子翻译成汉语。

_____

6. What do you think of John?

_____

七、写作技能提升练。

假如你是 Steven，请写出你的夏令营活动计划。

要求：1. 请使用正确的时态。

2. 人物活动设计合理，表达通畅正确。

3. 书写清晰规范，不少于 6 句话。

4. 题目自拟。

_____

_____

_____

_____

口语能力PK台

口语测评

一、我是小小播音员，我的朗诵最美妙。

1. What happens to trees in different seasons?
2. What will you do for the summer holiday?
3. I will go to the beach with my family.
4. —Will you swim in the sea?
   —Yes, I will./No, I will not.

二、我是小记者，采访一下 Danny 的暑期计划吧。



A: Hello, Danny. Summer is coming. What will you do this summer?

B: …



A: Good idea! When will you go there?

B: …



A: Who will you go with?

B: …

A: How will you go there?

B: …



A: It will be fun.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 18 Three Kites in the Sky ☞(答案见103页)

课内阅读对点练

一、根据 Three Kites in the Sky 的故事完成下列任务。(教材第48－49页)

(一)根据故事内容选择正确的一项。

(　　)1. Who has many colours and a long red tail?

A. Karla.　　B. Kylie.　　C. Krista.

(　　)2. Who flies faster and higher?

A. Karla.　　B. Kylie.　　C. Krista.

(　　)3. What is Krista like?

a. She is beautiful.

b. She is not strong.

c. She is not fast.

d. She is kind.

A. a. b. c.　　B. b. c.　　C. b. c. d.

(　　)4. Can the boy swim well?

A. Yes, he can.

B. No, he can't.

C. Yes, he doesn't need help.

(　　)5. Who helps the boy at last?

A. The first kite.　　B. The second kite.

C. The third kite and the man.

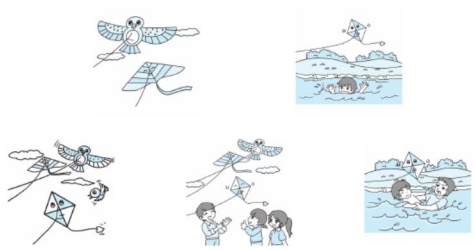
(　　)6. Krista sees a boy _____ in the lake.

A. swimming　　B. to swim　　C. swam

(二)读一读,写出与画线单词相反或相对应的单词。

1. She can fly very <u>high</u> in the sky. _____
2. Kylie is a <u>beautiful</u> kite. _____
3. The wind is not too <u>strong</u>. _____
4. Kylie has a <u>long</u> red tail. _____
5. He <u>brings</u> the boy to the beach. _____
6. Now, no one <u>remembers</u> beautiful Kylie. _____

(三)用箭头画出故事中的路线图。



(四)认真阅读故事,回答以下问题。

1. On a wonderful day, What are the three kites doing?

_____

(　　)2. Why do people remember Krista?

A. Because Krista can not fly faster and higher.

B. Because Krista is poor and lonely(孤独的).

C. Because Krista helps the little boy. She is a kind-hearted kite.

3. What happens to the little boy?

_____

4. What do you think of the man who saves the boy?

_____

(五)重温故事,说一说三个风筝的特点吧。

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

拓展阅读提升练

二、阅读短文，完成任务。

_____

One day a crow is sitting in a big tree. She has a big piece of meat in her mouth. An old fox is looking for his breakfast. When he sees the crow and her meat, he says to the crow, "Good morning, Mrs. Crow! How are you?" But the crow doesn't say a word.

"You are very beautiful, Mrs. Crow. And you have a beautiful voice, too." says the fox. "Will you please sing for me?"

"How nice the fox is! I must sing for him," the crow thinks. So she opens her mouth, "Caw!" The meat goes down into the fox's mouth.

A. 根据故事内容，选择和回答问题。

(　　)1. The best title is _____.

A. The Crow　　B. The Fox

C. The Crow and The Fox

(　　)2. The story is about _____.

A. 

B. 

C. 

(　　)3. What is the fox doing?

A. He is singing.

B. He is eating breakfast.

C. He is looking for his breakfast.

(　　)4. Where does the crow sit?

A. In a tree.　　B. On a stone.

C. Under a tree.

(　　)5. What can we learn about the fox?

A. He is very nice.　B. He is very bad.

C. He is very funny.

6. Why does the fox ask the crow to sing for him?

_____.

B. 根据故事以及你的生活经验，联想一下后来发生了什么？请你写出几句话。

_____

_____

_____.

三、阅读短文，完成下列各题。

_____

A wolf is very hungry. It looks for food here and there. At last, it finds some bread and meat in the hole of a tree. The hungry wolf squeezes (挤) into the hole. It eats all the food.

That is a farmer's lunch. He is on his way back to the tree to have lunch. But there is no food in the hole. Instead(反而), he sees a wolf. The wolf sees the farmer, and it is very frightened (害怕的). It tries to get out of the hole. But it can't. Its tummy(肚子) is too big. The farmer gives the wolf beatings(打).

A. 根据短文内容填入所缺单词(每空一词)。

1. The wolf is very _____.
2. The wolf eats the farmer's _____.
3. When the wolf sees the farmer, it is very _____.
4. The wolf can't get out of the hole because of its big _____.
5. The farmer gives the wolf _____.

B. 根据短文内容，回答下列问题。

1. The best title is _____.
2. If you were the farmer, what would you do?

_____

_____

_____.

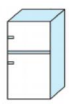
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Again, Please! ☞(答案见104页)

听力专练

听力专练

一、听录音，选出正确的一项。

( )1. A.  B.  C. 

( )2. A.  B.  C. 

( )3. A.  B.  C. 

( )4. A.  B.  C. 

( )5. A.  B.  C. 

二、听录音，判断下列句子与听到的内容是(T)否(F)相符。

( )1. Sometimes I like to watch the bird.

( )2. They live in a small village.

( )3. In autumn, the trees lose their leaves.

( )4. I will say hi to my mother.

( )5. I want to learn to fly.

三、听录音，选择正确的答语。

( )1. A. He will go on trips.
B. He is sitting in the sun.

( )2. A. They are yellow.
B. They are green.

( )3. A. I like to go water skiing.
B. I like to go skating.

( )4. A. It's winter. B. It's September.

( )5. A. I will go on a trip to the forest next week.
B. They will go to Canada to visit their friends.

四、听录音，填上正确的单词，补全句子。

1. Summer is hot. I like _____.

2. I will swim in a _____ this summer.

3. Linda, don't be _____.

4. We will watch an old _____.

5. My son is very _____.

读写专练

五、读一读，选择正确的选项填在横线上，补全对话。

A: Hi, Paul! 1. _____

B: I will learn to swim. 2. _____

A: 3. _____ They live near a very big forest.

B: What else will you do?

A: 4. _____

B: Really? Would you like to go with me?

A: OK! 5. _____

A. Let's go.
B. I'll visit my grandparents.
C. How about you?
D. What will you do?
E. I'll also learn to swim.

六、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

A train stops at a station(车站). A young man wants to come out, but it is raining. A boy is

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

standing under a big umbrella. The young man says to the boy, "Can you go and get us two hamburgers, one for you and one for me? Here are two dollars." "Great!" says the boy and he goes to buy hamburgers. After some time, the boy is back. He is eating a hamburger. "Where is my hamburger?" asks the young man. "Oh, there is only one hamburger left (剩下). So I'm eating mine. Here is your dollar."

( )1. Where is the young man?
A. At a station.
B. Under a big umbrella.
C. On the train.

( )2. What does the young man want to buy?
A. An umbrella. B. Hamburgers.
C. A ticket.

( )3. Who does the young man ask for help?
A. A boy. B. A man. C. A girl.

( )4. Does the young man get a hamburger?
A. No, he doesn't. B. Yes, he does.
C. We don't know.

( )5. Is the boy clever?
A. No, he isn't. B. Yes, he is.
C. No, he doesn't.

七、读有所获。



Look up at the sky. Do you see white or gray shapes (形状) moving across it? Those are clouds. Most clouds are too far away and we can't feel them. You can only look at them. But there's one kind of cloud you can feel when you stand on the ground. That is fog (雾). It's the lowest kind of cloud. You can learn a lot by looking at clouds. The shapes of clouds and their colours can tell you how high they are and what kind of weather they will bring.

根据短文内容,完成任务。

1. Most clouds are too _____ away and we can't feel them.
2. You can learn a lot by _____ at clouds.

( )3. _____ is the lowest kind of cloud.
A. Clouds B. Air C. Fog

( )4. What information can we get from the shapes and colours of clouds?
A. The kind of weather.
B. The feelings of people.
C. The colour you like.

( )5. What's the meaning of "move across"?
A. 穿过 B. 感动 C. 漂浮

八、观察图片,根据图片中的内容加上自己合理的想象,写一篇短文。





要求:1. 根据图片内容写出短文题目。
2. 确定好时态。
3. 不得少于6句话,语句通顺且正确。

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 Li Ming Comes Home

Lesson 19 Buying Gifts ☞(答案见 104 页)

一、核心素养练

同学们,有很多英语短语意思相同、相近或相关,但它们的用法是有区别的,我们要学会根据不同的语言环境,选择恰当的词汇哦。

读一读,根据图片提示,选择正确的短语补全句子(注意使用单词的正确形式哦)。【对比记忆法】

go home　　by plane/air　　fly home

1. 
Peter will _____ next month, and last week he _____.

by bike　　ride a bike

2. 
Linda often _____ to the park, and she'll go to the park _____ tomorrow.

walk to school　　on foot

3. 
John _____ twice a week, and yesterday he went to school _____.

by taxi　　take a taxi

4. 
Yesterday I went to work _____. Today I want to _____, too.

同学们,你还能想出哪些类似的短语,写出 2 ~ 4 个吧。

_____

二、读一读,选一选。

(　　)1. Here _____ some little flags.
A. is　　B. are　　C. am

(　　)2. Do you need a gift _____ everyone in your family?
A. to　　B. with　　C. for

(　　)3. Those are nice pictures _____ Australia.
A. come　　B. from　　C. come from

(　　)4. —_____ these T-shirts?
—Okay.
A. How many　　B. What about
C. How much

(　　)5. How many _____ does she need?
A. computer　　B. computers　　C. a computer

三、选词填空。(选项可重复使用)

How much　　How many　　How far
How long　　How often

1. _____ water is there in the bowl?
2. _____ flags do you need?
3. _____ is it from China to Canada?
4. _____ does Jenny brush her teeth?
5. _____ is your trip?
6. _____ for one apple?

四、我们在使用英语时,要根据正确的情境,使用恰当而得体的句子。请大家读一读,选出正确的句子吧。

(　　)1. 当你想知道那些书多少钱时,你会用哪句话来询问:
A. How many books are there?
B. How much are these books?
C. How much are those books?

(　　)2. 当你买东西时,想要说"我要买两顶帽子。",下面哪句话是你最好的选择:
A. He wants to buy two caps.
B. I'll take two caps.
C. I take two caps.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(　　)3. 你问朋友需要什么的时候，你会怎么说：
A. What would you like?
B. What do you want?
C. What do you need?

(　　)4. 你看见朋友买礼物，你想知道他要送给谁，你会怎么说：
A. Who will you give the gift to?
B. Who do you give?
C. Who are you?

(　　)5. 你和朋友逛街，想知道他想给家人买什么，怎样说更好：
A. What do you buy?
B. What do you want to buy for your family?
C. What does your family want?

五、选择恰当的句子完成对话。（只填序号）

Susan: Hello, Linda! 1. _____
Linda: That's beautiful! I like it!
Susan: 2. _____
Linda: I need two.
Susan: 3. _____
Linda: One is for me, the other is for my elder sister. She'll like it.
Susan: 4. _____
Linda: I want to buy a sports shirt for my brother.
Susan: 5. _____
Linda: Good idea!
Susan: 6. _____
Linda: OK.

A. Maybe you can have a look in that clothes shop.
B. Come and look at this cap.
C. Let's go!
D. Who will you buy them for?
E. What else do you need?
F. How many caps do you need?

六、按要求完成句子。

1. Will Danny take eleven gifts?（作肯定回答）
_____

2. I will give the gift to my mother.（对画线部分提问）
_____ will _____ _____ the gift _____?

3. He needs twelve gifts for his family.（对画线部分提问）
_____

4. need　a　I　gift　everyone　for　my　in　family　(.)（连词成句）
_____

七、根据 Jean 的礼物清单回答问题。

gifts					total
How many?	3	2	2	4	11
How much?	24 dollars	10 dollars	60 dollars	20 dollars	114 dollars

1. How many dresses does Jean need?
_____

2. How much are the dresses?
_____

3. How many gifts does Jean want to buy?
_____

4. What are the gifts?
_____

5. How much are the gifts?
_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 20 Looking at Photos ☞(答案见 104 页)

一、读一读，选出不同类的单词。

( )1. A. got B. eat C. bought

( )2. A. taught B. remember C. found

( )3. A. tomato B. potato C. photo

( )4. A. ready B. playground C. shop

( )5. A. beside B. behind C. saw

二、核心素养练

英语中动词有很多变化形式，通过各种变化来构成时态，请你仿照例子写一写。

例如：do — did — doing — will do

1. get —_____—_____—_____

2. find —_____—_____—_____

3. hit —_____—_____—_____

4. teach —_____—_____—_____

5. begin —_____—_____—_____

6. say —_____—_____—_____

三、火眼金睛，挑出正确的词语补全句子。

1. Linda _____ (find/found) these old photos. They were nice.

2. Look at this photo. He was _____ (at/on) school. 【导学号 6124664】

3. We played baseball _____ (on/at) the playground yesterday.

4. Here is a photo _____ (to/of) you.

5. She went shopping _____ (with/and) her sister.

四、选择正确的答语完成对话。

( )1. What are you doing?

A. I'm getting ready to go home.

B. I made my bed.

C. I work hard at school.

( )2. Where was Bob last Sunday?

A. He is on the playground.

B. He was on the playground.

C. He listened to music.

( )3. What did Bob do?

A. He played basketball with his friends.

B. She did her homework.

C. He flies a kite in the park.

( )4. What did you teach Danny?

A. I taught him with play basketball.

B. I taught him to play ping-pong.

C. Danny hit his hand.

( )5. What does Danny want to do?

A. He wanted to play basketball with a ping-pong ball.

B. He wants to play basketball with a ping-pong ball.

C. Yes, he does.

五、想一想，这些图片中的人物都在做什么？认真观察图片，选一选，然后仿照例句写一写。(注意句子时态为一般过去时哦)



(E)

last year



( )

last Sunday



( )

yesterday



( )

last week



( )

last Saturday

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A. play ping-pong　　B. go shopping

C. see the animals　　D. fly a kite

E. buy gifts

例:He bought gifts last year.

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

六、根据图片提示，填上恰当的词汇(注意使用恰当的形式哦)。









Last Sunday, all my family had a great time. My mom 1. _____ to a bookshop to buy a book. She loves reading. And then she 2. _____ the book in a little cafe on Sunday afternoon. My dad likes 3. _____ chess. He 4. _____ chess with some old men in the park. I love playing and eating. I 5. _____ my friend, and we went to the Green Valley(绿溪谷). In the evening, We 6. _____ KFC together. At 8:30, all my family went home. And all my family had a wonderful time.

七、根据短文内容，寻找关键信息，选择正确答案。

Miss Green taught maths at a school. She taught the boys and girls about eight years old. She always wanted to make her lessons interesting.

One day, she gave them a question. "If you buy apples," she said, "and an apple costs 12 cents, how much will you have to give for 12 apples?"

The students began to think, and for a long time nobody spoke. Then one boy said, "Could you say the question again?" Miss Green said, "If an apple costs ..." But the boy said, "Apple? I've been working it out in oranges! The answer must be different."

(　　)1. The best title is _____.

A. The Little Boy　B. Miss Green

C. An Apple or An Orange?

(　　)2. What did Miss Green teach at school?

A. She taught maths.

B. She taught English.

C. She taught history.

(　　)3. In Miss Green's question, an apple costs _____.

A. 10 cents　B. 11 cents　C. 12 cents

(　　)4. The boy thought the question was about _____.

A. apples　B. oranges　C. bananas

(　　)5. The answer to the question is _____.

A. 12 cents　　B. 24 cents

C. One hundred and forty-four cents

八、请用英语介绍一下你的上个周末。(不少于6句话)

Last Weekend

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

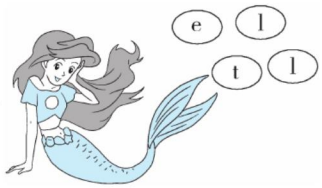
_____

_____

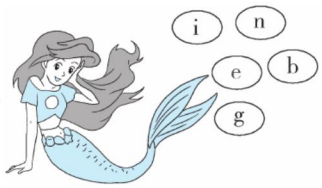
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 21 A Party for Li Ming ☞(答案见 105 页)

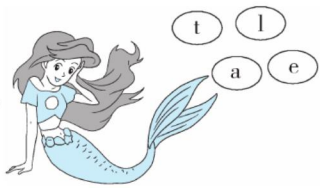
一、你能把美人鱼吐出的字母组成单词吗?

1. 

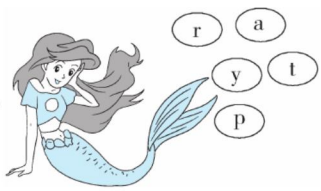
_____

2. 

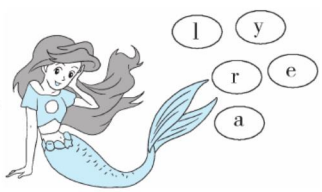
_____

3. 

_____

4. 

_____

5. 

_____

二、核心素养练

英语中有很多词汇意思相反,你能根据语境或语意写出正确的词汇吗?

1. —The party begins at 4:00. Don't be late.
—Okay, I'll be _____!
2. Please don't come after 4:00 in the afternoon. Please come _____ 4:00.
3. Skiing is difficult for me, but it is _____ for my daughter.
4. I like the high jump. I can jump high, but my friend Lily jumps _____, and she doesn't like the sport.
5. My mother and I are leaving for Shanghai. Her suitcase is heavy. My backpack (背包) is _____. I'll help her carry the heavy suitcase.

三、读一读,选一选。

( )1. —Hello?
—Hello, Steven. _____ Linda calling. 【导学号 6124664】
A. I'm B. She's C. It's

( )2. My friend _____ soon.
A. leaves B. is leaving C. leaving

( )3. Let's _____ a good-bye party for him.
A. have B. having C. has

( )4. Will we tell her _____ the party?
A. about B. to C. for

( )5. About nine people _____ coming to the party.
A. will be B. are C. is

四、核心素养练

同学们,英语中很多单词在使用时要根据语境变换不同的形式来表达特定的含义,请你试着用词的适当形式填一填。

begin he have surprise call

A: Let's 1. _____ a surprise party for Li Ming.

B: When will the party begin?

A: It 2. _____ at 4:00 p. m. tomorrow.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B: Will we tell Li Ming?

A: No. It's a surprise for 3. _____. I want 4. _____ him!

B: I'll invite Kim. Let me 5. _____ her.

五、按要求完成句子。

1. Nine people are coming to the party. (对画线部分提问)

_____

2. I will be early. (改成一般疑问句)

_____

3. for come please Tom to party the (.)(连词成句)

_____

4. want surprise we to Li Ming (!) (连词成句)

_____

5. for who the is party surprise (?) (连词成句)

_____

六、同学们，快来补全对话吧。

Lily: Hello! This is Lily. 1. _____

Lisa: This is Lisa speaking. 2. _____

Lily: Fine, thanks. Would you like to watch a movie with me this afternoon?

Lisa: That's a good idea! 3. _____

Lily: What about half past two?

Lisa: OK. 4. _____

Lily: Where will we meet?

Lisa: Let's meet at the gate of the movie theatre.

Lily: OK. 5. _____

Lisa: See you.

A. Let's meet at half past two.

B. See you this afternoon.

C. When will we meet?

D. May I speak to Lisa?

E. How are you, Lily?

七、阅读短文，完成任务。

Some girls are making a lot of noise in class. Their teacher says in a loud voice, "Stop making so much noise. A girl is really like 500 ducks. You are driving me mad!"

A girl student stands up and goes to the restroom. When she comes back to the classroom, she says to the teacher, "One thousand ducks are waiting for you outside, Miss Grace."

The teacher is very surprised and goes out to see what it is. To her surprise, she sees her mother and her daughter standing outside the classroom.

根据短文内容,判断正(T)误(F)。

( )1. The teacher thinks the girls look like ducks.

( )2. The teacher is almost mad.

( )3. A boy student goes to the restroom.

( )4. The teacher is very happy when she hears what the girl says.

( )5. The teacher's daughter is outside the classroom.

6. What do you think of the girl student?

_____

_____

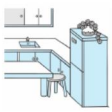
_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 22 Surprise! ☞(答案见105页)

一、读一读，选出与画线短语相关的图片。

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

E. 

( )1. At 4:00 p.m., Steven arrives for the party.

( )2. Please come to the kitchen. I need your help.

( )3. She will bring him home.

( )4. Kim bought some ice cream this morning.

( )5. She goes to the shop to buy something.

二、读一读，根据句子意思选择合适的词，补全句子(注意要使用其适当形式哦)。

when with make bring buy

1. Jack arrives in Shanghai _____ his father.
2. Jenny will _____ her friend home this Saturday.
3. We are _____ a cake in the kitchen.
4. That's _____ our English class begins.
5. My mother went to the shop and _____ a dress for me.

三、读一读，选一选。

( )1. Does he know _____ the party?
A. to B. for C. about

( )2. Will the music lesson begin _____ at 10:00?
A. to B. for C. /

( )3. She _____ know about the truth.
A. isn't B. don't C. doesn't

( )4. Every cookie _____ letters.
A. has B. have C. having

( )5. Whose name begins _____ K?
A. of B. with C. for

四、核心素养练

发现事物的发展顺序是我们必备的能力之一。我们要能够在阅读中抓住关键信息，如表示顺序的关联词，或根据自己的生活经验等来判断事情的先后顺序。请匹配句子与图片内容，并将句子按正确的顺序排一排吧。

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

5. 

6. 

( )I have a good friend named Paul. He's from England. Two and a half months ago, he came to China. He is leaving soon. I want to have a party for him.

( )Then, I will go to the shop to buy some food and drinks.

( )I'll invite some friends to come to the party. First, I'll call and tell them about the date and the place.

( )After shopping, I'll go back home to make a cake. I want to make a big cake for Paul.

( )I don't want to tell him about the party. I want to surprise him.

( )At last, I'll give Paul a gift. I hope we can be friends forever.

正确排列顺序：_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

五、按要求完成句子。

1. Danny opens the door.（改成一般疑问句）

_____

2. Jenny knows about the party.（改成否定句）

_____

3. when that is party the begins (.)（连词成句）

_____

4. comes she here (.)（连词成句）

_____

5. He will get home at half past four.（对画线部分提问）

_____

六、阅读短文，给图片标序号。

Today is Children's Day. Rose doesn't go to school. She is at home. After breakfast, she helps her mother clean the house. Then she invites her grandfather and grandmother to her house. She wants to have a surprise party. She makes five little cakes. They are nice. Every cake has a name. At 5:00, her grandfather and grandmother get to her house. They bring a new schoolbag and some pens to Rose. And Rose gives them two beautiful cakes. All of them are very happy.


(　　)


(　　)


(　　)


(　　)


(　　)

七、阅读短文，完成任务。

_____

Maria is a five-year-old girl. She likes playing very much. It's time for bed. But Maria isn't sleepy. So the little girl asks her mother to tell her a long story or she is not going to bed.

So her mother begins to tell her a story like this, "There is a house, and there is some rice in it. One day, a bird goes into the house and comes out with a grain of rice(一粒米). Then another bird goes into the house and comes out with a grain of rice. Then a third..."

"Stop! I want to sleep," Maria shouts.

(一)根据短文内容选择正确答案。

(　　)1. The best title is _____.

A. Little Girl

B. Bedtime Story about Birds

C. A Long Story

(　　)2. Does Maria want her mother to tell her a short story?

A. Yes, she does.

B. No, she doesn't.

C. No, he doesn't.

(　　)3. What is the meaning of(意思)"sleepy"?

A. Go to bed.

B. Tired and ready to sleep.

C. Happy because of something good.

(二)根据短文内容判断正(T)误(F)。

(　　)4. Maria's mother tells her a story about birds.

(　　)5. There is only one bird in the story.

6. 请将画线部分的句子翻译成汉语。

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 23 Good-bye! ☞(答案见 105 页)

一、核心素养练

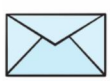
把握读音规则,掌握单词拼读技巧,有助于我们更好地记忆单词。读一读,从句子的画线单词中找出含有例词画线部分读音的单词。

1. The cat in a blue hat ate the fish on the table.
late _____
2. I will give him a surprise. I'll miss him.
invite _____
3. Let me stand beside Steven.
tell _____
4. I try to move the heavy yellow box.
early _____
5. I'll eat a hot dog for breakfast. That's great!
ready _____

二、图文对对碰。


( )


( )


( )


( )



( )


( )

A. It's time to say good-bye.
B. They arrive at the airport together.
C. It's a good Chinese kite.
D. He gives Jenny a little, red dragon.
E. They had a good trip.
F. Don't forget to write to us.

三、火眼金睛,选出正确的词语补全句子。

1. He _____ (have/has) a good-bye party for us.
2. She gives a gift _____ (to/for) Danny.
3. They want me _____ (remember/to remember) China.
4. He is _____ (leave/leaving) for Canada.
5. I have something _____ (to/for) you.

四、读一读,选一选。

( )1. The train _____ Zhejiang is leaving soon.
A. on B. for C. at

( )2. People always eat _____ dumplings at the Spring Festival.
A. China B. Chinese C. chinese

( )3. Don't forget _____ Danny. He's forgetful.
A. call B. to call C. called

( )4. That's _____ apple.
A. a big, red B. an big, red
C. a red, big

( )5. It's time _____ me _____ go to school.
A. for; to B. to; for C. at; to

五、读一读,根据短文内容选择恰当的词语填空(注意使用其恰当形式哦)。

arrive have a birthday party
all get ready for everything

Maria's birthday is coming. She is going to be twelve years old. Her mother, Mrs. Grace, is going to 1. _____ for her. Ten of Maria's friends are coming to the party. They are 2. _____ girls. Mrs. Grace is 3. _____ the party. She is going shopping now. She is going to buy some fruit and

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

drinks for the party. She buys some apples, pineapples, watermelons and bananas. Then she goes home.

It's three o'clock in the afternoon. 4. _____ is ready. Now the last girl 5. _____. The party is going to start in twenty minutes.

六、阅读短文，完成任务。

_____

Peter is six years old. One day, he asks his mother for two cents(美分) before leaving home for school.

"What will you do with the money?" his mother asks.

"I will give it to a poor old lady," Peter answers.

"Oh, my honey, you are a good boy," says his mother. "Here is the money." Peter takes the money and puts it in his Mickey schoolbag.

"Why do you give your money to the poor lady?" his mother asks.

"Because she sells me candies ," Peter says.

根据短文内容,按要求完成各小题。

(　　)1. The best title is _____.

A. The Story of Money

B. The Good Way of Getting Money

C. The Clever Boy

(　　)2. How much money does Peter want?

A. One cent.　　B. Two cents.

C. Three cents.

(　　)3. Peter's mother thinks Peter is a _____.

A. bad boy　　B. good boy

C. naughty boy

(　　)4. Why does Peter give the old lady money?

A. Because he is a kind boy.

B. Because the old lady is poor.

C. Because he has to pay for candies.

5. 请将画线部分翻译成汉语。

_____

6. What can we learn about Peter?

_____

七、写作技能提升练。

妈妈的生日就要到了,你会为她准备什么？比如你会为她买什么礼物？你会为她准备一个party 吗？

要求:1. 请使用正确的时态。

2. 人物活动合理,表达通畅且正确。

3. 书写清晰规范,不少于6句话。

4. 题目自拟。

_____

_____

_____

口语能力PK台

我是小小播音员。 我的朗诵最美妙。

口语测评

Hi, I'm Linda! Yesterday was my birthday. I had a party at home. My friends came to my home in the afternoon. I got a lot of gifts from them. At the party we ate a big cake, sang songs and listened to music. It was a wonderful day. How happy we were!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 24 Danny's Surprise Cake ☞(答案见106页)

课内阅读对点练

一、根据Danny's Surprise Cake的故事完成下列任务。

(一)根据故事内容选择正确的选项(注意不都是单选哦)。

(　　)1. Why does Danny get up early in the morning?

A. Because he will do exercise.

B. Because he will eat breakfast.

C. Because his class will have a party.

(　　)2. What is Danny going to do?

A. He is going to walk to the party.

B. He is going to make a cake.

C. He is going to read a book.

(　　)3. How does Danny go to school?

A. On foot.　B. By bike.　C. By bus.

(　　)4. What are the surprises from Danny?

A. Every piece of cake has a dollar in it.

B. He forgot the sugar.

C. Every cookie looks like a student.

(　　)5. Who sends Li Ming a piece of cake?

A. Danny.　B. Jenny.　C. Mr. Wood.

(　　)6. Is the summer holiday coming?

A. Yes, it is.　B. No, it isn't.

C. We don't know.

(二)读一读,写出与画线单词相反或相对应的单词。

1. Danny goes to school on foot. He walks <u>slowly</u>. _____

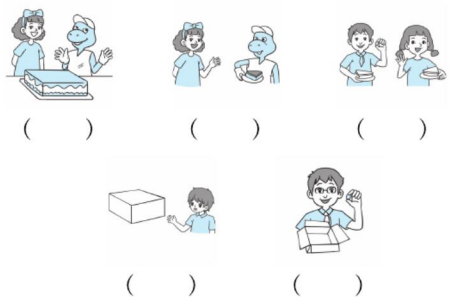
2. Danny's special cake is <u>heavy</u>. _____

3. I think you <u>forgot</u> something. _____

4. Li Ming finds a piece of very old, very <u>dry</u> cake. _____

5. Li Ming looks <u>inside</u> the cake. _____

(三)用箭头画出故事中的线索图,并选择相应的语句。　【关键信息梳理法】



(　　)　(　　)　(　　)

(　　)　(　　)

A. Mr. Wood puts a piece of cake in a box and sends it to Li Ming.

B. But he forgets to put the sugar in the cake.

C. A week later, Li Ming gets a piece of dry cake and a letter. He is so happy.

D. And every piece of cake has a dollar in it. He makes a surprise cake for everyone.

E. Danny makes a special cake. It looks great.

(四)认真阅读故事,思考以下问题。

1. When does the party begin?

_____

2. What does Jenny bring to the class party?

_____

3. Where does Mr. Wood write Li Ming's address?

_____

4. When does Li Ming get the box?

_____

5. What does Danny need to make a cake?

_____

拓展阅读提升练

二、阅读短文,完成任务。

_____

Long long ago, there was a king. He liked to write stories, but his stories were not good. People were afraid of him, so they all said his stories

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

were good.

One day, the king showed his stories to a famous writer. He waited for the writer to praise (赞扬) these stories. But the writer said his stories were so bad that he should throw them into fire(火). The king got very angry with him and sent him to prison(监狱).

After some time, the king set him free. Again he showed him some of his new stories and asked what he thought of them.

After reading them, the writer at once turned to the soldiers and said, "Take me back to prison, please."

A. 根据故事内容,选择和回答问题。

( )1. The best title is _____.

A. The King and the Writer

B. The King

C. The Writer

( )2. The story is about _____.

A.  B.  C. 

( )3. What did the writer mean in the last paragraph?

A. The stories were still bad.

B. He liked living in the prison.

C. The king wrote better stories.

( )4. What can we learn about the king?

A. People all liked his stories.

B. People were afraid of him.

C. He could write good stories.

( )5. What did the writer do after reading the stories written by the king?

A. He praised the king.

B. He said the stories were bad.

C. He threw the stories into fire.

6. What do you think of the king and the writer?

_____

B. 根据故事以及你的生活经验,联想一下后来发生了什么。请你写出几句话。

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

三、阅读短文,完成任务。

_____

Mrs. Green is a middle-aged woman. She has a poor memory and always forgets things. One day, Mrs. Green hurts her arm, so she goes to see a doctor.

The doctor asks how old she is. Mrs. Green answers, "I don't know how old I am."

"You don't even know how old you are?" the doctor replies(回答) in surprise.

Mrs. Green suddenly remembers something and says, "Oh, let me think. When I was 20 years old, my husband was 30. Now he is 60. That is twice 30. So I'm twice 20. Twice 20 is 40. I'm now 40 years old."

A. 根据短文内容填入所缺单词(每空一词)。

1. Mrs. Green always forgets _____.

2. Mrs. Green goes to see a doctor because she _____ her arm.

3. In fact, Mrs. Green is _____ years old.

4. Mrs. Green _____ know how old she is.

B. 根据短文内容,回答下列问题。

( )1. The best title is _____.

A. Mrs. Green

B. The Age of Mrs. Green

2. Why does Mrs. Green make a mistake in her age?

_____

_____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Again, Please! ☞(答案见106页)

听力专练

听力专练

一、听录音,选出你所听到的单词的对应词。

( )1. A. get B. remember

( )2. A. easy B. early

( )3. A. after B. light

( )4. A. teach B. ask

( )5. A. leave B. back

二、听录音,给图片标序号。【三步两遍听音法】





( ) ( ) ( )





( ) ( )

三、听录音,选择相应的答语并标序号。

( )It begins at 9:00.

( )She needs ten gifts.

( )Tomorrow.

( )Seventy dollars.

( )Twelve people.

四、听短文,填上正确的单词。

Today is Jenny's surprise party. Her parents are at home. They're making a 1. _____ and some cookies. 2. _____ cookie has a letter. Her parents don't 3. _____ her about the party. The party 4. _____ at 4:30 in the afternoon. Kim comes to Jenny's home at 4:00. She is 5. _____.

Jenny is shopping for gifts. At 4:20, she arrives home. How surprised she is! 6. _____ of people have a good time.

读写专练

五、阅读短文,选择正确的答案。

Dear Peter,

Thank you for your letter. Now I'm going to answer some of your questions. You ask me about the weather in Beijing in winter. It's quite cold and it often snows in winter. After snowing, the ground is white. And I can skate on the ice. It's very interesting to skate. I like winter best.

You ask me when is the best time to come to China. I think the best time to come to China is in spring or in fall. It's often too hot in summer and it's too cold in winter. I have to finish this letter now. Ask your brother to come to China with you together. Welcome to Beijing soon.

Yours,

Jim

( )1. Which country is Jim in?

A. America. B. China.

C. Canada.

( )2. What season does Jim like best?

A. Spring. B. Summer.

C. Winter.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )3. When is the best time to come to China?

A. Spring. B. Summer.

C. Spring or fall.

( )4. Is it very hot in summer in Beijing?

A. Yes, it is. B. No, it isn't.

C. We don't know.

( )5. What is the text(文章)?

A. A letter. B. A story.

C. A piece of news.

六、完形填空。

Danny's class ___1___ have a party. Danny wants to make a special cake ___2___ the party. He wakes up early in the morning. He won't be ___3___. Danny begins ___4___ the cake. He puts some flour(面粉), oil(油), milk and a little salt(盐) ___5___ the bowl(碗). He makes a picture ___6___ it. It ___7___ like the flag of Canada. But he forgets ___8___ the sugar. There is ___9___ in the cake, too. Every piece of the cake ___10___ a cent in it.

( )1. A. is B. will C. will be

( )2. A. because B. for C. of

( )3. A. late B. early C. easy

( )4. A. make B. makes C. to make

( )5. A. in B. on C. of

( )6. A. on B. in C. at

( )7. A. look B. looking C. looks

( )8. A. put B. to put C. puts

( )9. A. something special

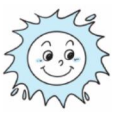
B. special something

C. special somethings

( )10. A. is B. has C. have

七、读有所获。

The Sun



People need the sun. The Earth needs the sun. The sun is a star. The star is burning(燃烧) gases(气体). The sun is a ball of gases. The gases make flames(火焰) and bubbles(气泡).

The surface(表面) of the sun is hot. The sun is bigger than the Earth.

The sun is in the solar system(太阳系). The sun is in the centre. The sun is the closest star to the Earth. People on the Earth see the sun. The sun is far away. Light comes from the sun. Light comes to the Earth. Light reaches(到达) the Earth in eight minutes.

根据短文内容,填入所缺单词,每空一词。

1. The sun is a _____.
2. The sun is a ball of _____.
3. The sun is _____ than the earth.
4. The surface of the sun is _____.
5. The sun is in the _____ of the solar system.
6. Light from the sun reaches the Earth in _____ minutes.

八、小学马上就要毕业了,毕业聚会你们要怎么准备呢? 快来策划一下吧,请把你的策划方案写出来。(不少于6句话)

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

期末复习训练 » Unit 1 复习训练

知识导图



本单元重难、易错点提醒

1.some 和any的用法:some用于肯定句和疑问句（表示建议或希望得到肯定回答的请求），any用于否定句和疑问句。

2.this, that, these, those的区别:这四个单词都是指示代词，this和that后接单数名词，this指代近处的物品，that指代远处的物品；these和those后接复数名词，these指代近处的物品，those指代远处的物品。

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见106页)

词汇过关

一、根据句意，选词填空。

hand　　leg

1. He can't do his homework today. Because his right _____ hurts.

policewoman　　policeman

2. My mother is a _____.

difficult　　different

3. This question is _____. I can't answer it.

wear　　put on

4. He is _____ a sweater today.

question　　answer

5. He asked a _____, but we didn't know the _____.

句型语法过关

二、选择正确的一项。

(　　)1. —What's your favourite sport?
—I like _____ best.
A. basketball　　B. trousers
C. apples

(　　)2. Do you want _____ one or _____ one?
A. these; those　　B. this; that
C. these; that

(　　)3. Let _____ try.
A. I　　B. my　　C. me

(　　)4. I don't have _____ juice. Could you give me _____?
A. any; any　　B. some; some
C. any; some

(　　)5. I always play ping-pong _____ Saturday and Sunday.
A. on　　B. in　　C. at

(　　)6. It is too _____ for him to throw the ball. He is too short.
A. easy　　B. happy
C. difficult

(　　)7. This is a _____ good game. I like it _____ much.
A. too; too　　B. very; very
C. too; very

(　　)8. I don't have brothers _____ sisters.
A. and　　B. or　　C. so

(　　)9. My sister _____ a coat for my mother on her birthday last year.
A. buys　　B. brought
C. bought

(　　)10. My friend often _____ me _____ football.
A. taught; to play
B. teaches; play
C. teaches; to play

三、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. run
He often _____ in the park in the morning. Yesterday he _____ to the zoo. Look! He is _____ now.　　【导学号 6124664】

2. teach
My father is _____ my little brother to fly a kite. He _____ me to swim last year.

3. think
I always _____ English is easy to learn. But this morning I _____ English was not easy.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

四、根据表格，用 some 或 any 填空。

			
Peter	√	√	×
Bob	×	√	√

1. —Peter, do you have _____ ping-pong balls?
   —Sorry, I don't have _____.
2. —Bob, do you have _____ ping-pong balls?
   —Yes, I have _____ footballs, too. But I don't have _____ basketballs.

		
Amy	√	×
Jack	×	√
Judy	√	×

3. Amy: I have _____ milk. Would you like _____?
   Jack: No, thanks.
4. Jack is hungry. So he has _____ dumplings.
5. Judy has _____ milk. But she doesn't have _____ dumplings. She wants to buy _____.

五、连词成句。

1. shorts wear I play to basketball
   _____.
2. much those are how balls
   _____?
3. hit can't he to ball me the
   _____.
4. saw animals in I zoo some the
   _____.
5. Orange Team they played with a game the
   _____.

综合运用过关

六、选择合适的选项，补全对话。

A: Hi, Bruce. What did you do this afternoon?
B: 1. _____
A: 2. _____
B: My father. 3. _____ What about you? Did you play sports?
A: No. 4. _____
B: 5. _____
A: I bought some candy and my mother bought some food.

A. I went shopping with my mother.
B. Who won?
C. What did you buy?
D. I played a ping-pong game with my father.
E. He is a good ping-pong player.

七、阅读短文，判断正（T）误（F）。

I like different kinds(种类) of sports. But of all sports, I like basketball best. Yao Ming is my favourite basketball player. He is 2. 26 meters tall. He comes from Shanghai. He plays basketball very well. His team was Houston Rockets. I often watch his games on TV. My classmates like him, too. After class, we often play basketball together. I want to be a player like Yao Ming in the future.

(　　)1. Of all sports, I only like basketball.
(　　)2. Yao Ming is very tall.
(　　)3. I often watch Yao Ming play basketball in the stadium(体育场).
(　　)4. My classmates like Yao Ming, too.
(　　)5. I want to be a player in the future.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 复习训练

知识导图



本单元重难、易错点提醒

1.how much 和how many的区别：how many后接可数名词复数，how much后接不可数名词。How many books do you need?/How much juice do you have?

2.动名词短语作主语：Riding a bike is exercise.

3.在一般现在时的句子中第三人称单数作主语时，谓语动词要用第三人称单数形式，即动词后要加-s或-es。 Before breakfast, Li Ming washes his hands and brushes his teeth.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见107页)

词汇过关

一、选出不同类的一项。

( )1. A. strong B. small C. exercise

( )2. A. brush B. wash C. face

( )3. A. hour B. teeth C. hand

( )4. A. day B. often C. week

( )5. A. first B. twice C. fourth

二、将下面的这些字母按正确顺序排列后就组成了本单元的重点单词，请你读一读句子，按照意思把单词写到横线上。

A. x e t n B. d b a C. i n t e u m s

D. e a t h h y l E. t e a f r

1. Don't read in the sun. It's _____ for your eyes.
2. I do my homework for about 30 _____ every day.
3. _____ April, it's May.
4. Exercise can help us _____ and strong.
5. I will go to Beijing _____ week.

三、选择合适的词组填空。

How old How many How often

How much How far

1. —_____ books do you have?
   —Five.
2. —_____ are you?
   —I'm twelve years old.
3. —_____ do you play football?
   —Twice a week.
4. —_____ is it from Beijing to Tianjin?
   —It's about 120 kilometres.
5. —_____ is the T-shirt?
   —It's fifty yuan.

句型语法过关

四、选词填空。

1. I often go for a walk _____ (two, twice) a day.
2. Eating too much meat is bad for your _____ (healthy, health)
3. What else _____ (do, does) she do at home?
4. She _____ (has, had) breakfast five times last week.
5. Danny walks _____ (to home, home) after school.

五、选择正确的一项。

( )1. Do you want _____ a teacher?
A. to be B. to C. be

( )2. We don't go to school _____ those days.
A. at B. in C. on

( )3. —_____ did he have breakfast?
—At 7:00.
A. When B. What C. How

( )4. What do you have _____ dinner?
A. for B. with C. to

( )5. I go to school _____ 7:20 _____ Tuesdays.
A. at; in B. at; on C. in; on

( )6. You need _____ an apple a day.
A. eating B. to eat C. eats

( )7. _____ minutes do you walk every day?
A. How much B. How many
C. How often

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

( )8. You need about thirty minutes _____ exercise a day.
A. of B. at C. with

( )9. —Why do you run every day?
—_____ I want a strong body.
A. But B. So C. Because

( )10. It's important for us _____.
A. do our homework
B. to do our homework
C. doing our homework

六、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. Mr. Green _____ (teach) us English last week.
2. My sister always _____ (think) she can jump very high.
3. _____ (run) is exercise.
4. What else _____ (do) Kim do at home?
5. Danny never brushes his _____ (tooth) after dinner.

七、读一读，选出对应句。

( )1. Lisa eats vegetables and fruit every day.
( )2. Lisa brushes her teeth.
( )3. Lisa washes her face and hands.
( )4. Lisa plays sports every day.
( )5. Lisa helps her parents.

A. She works hard at home.
B. She is clean.
C. She is healthy and strong.
D. She has strong teeth.
E. They are good for her.

八、根据图片提示，回答问题。

1. What's exercise?



_____

2. What does your grandmother do after breakfast?



_____

3. How often do you have English lessons?

Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thur.	Fri.	Sat.
√		√	√			

_____

4. What's your favourite food?



_____

5. Does he always have breakfast?

_____

Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thur.	Fri.
√			√	

综合运用过关

九、阅读短文，判断正(T)误(F)。

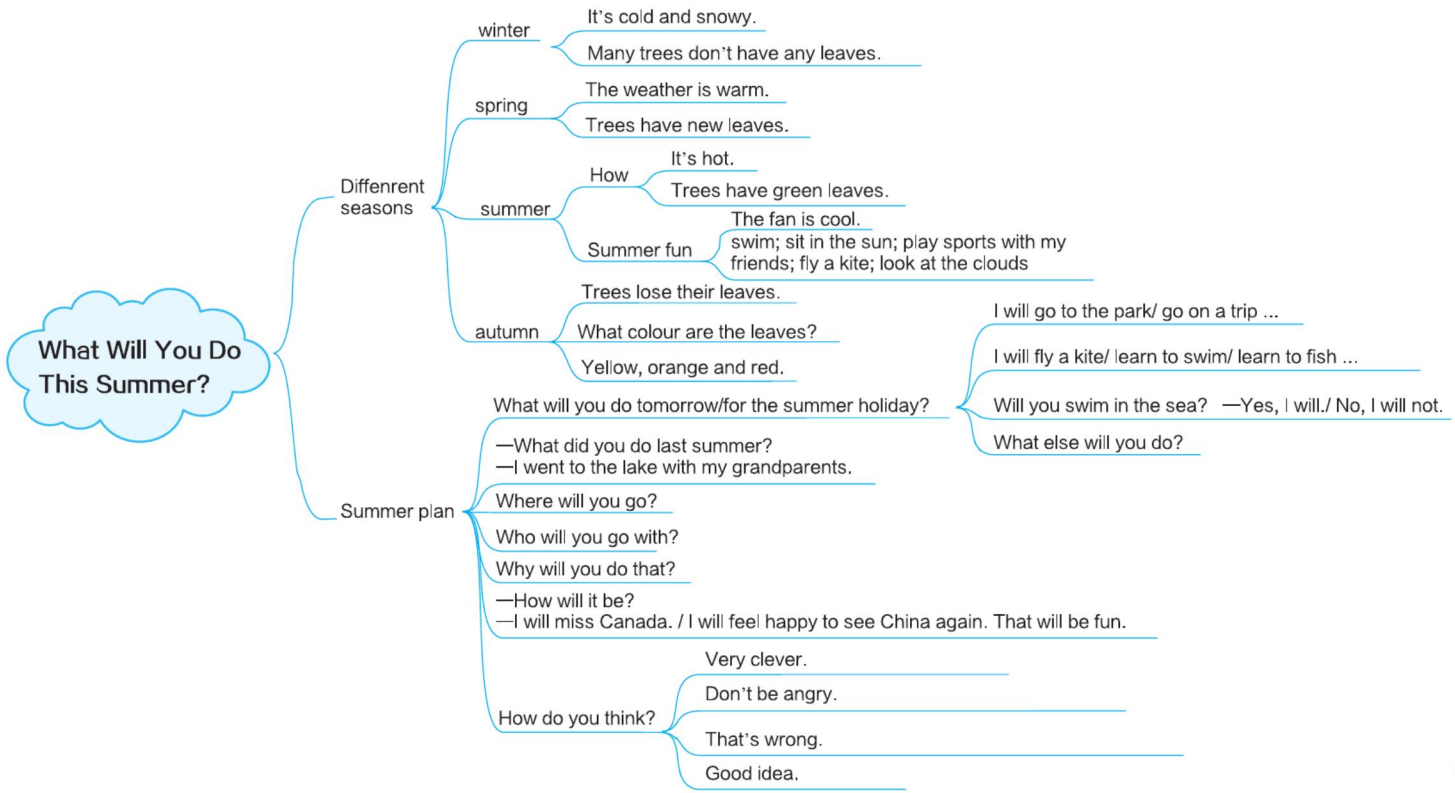
All of my friends are sports lovers. This girl is Amy. She is good at tennis. She often plays tennis with her sister at weekends. She never plays soccer. That girl is Tina. She is good at skating. She skates twice a week. She also likes playing ping-pong. Swimming is Bob's favourite sport. He can swim very fast. He also plays soccer and basketball. But he doesn't like playing tennis. He seldom plays tennis. Jack and Jill are brothers. They both like horse riding and swimming. Jack doesn't like tennis and Jill doesn't like skating. I am Peter. I love all kinds of sports. My favourite sport is roller skating(滑旱冰).

( )1. All of my friends are animal lovers.
( )2. Amy is good at tennis.
( )3. Jack and Jill come from different families.
( )4. Tina is good at playing tennis.
( )5. This passage talks about five children.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 复习训练

知识导图



本单元重难、易错点提醒

一般将来时与一般过去时的区分使用：一般将来时表示将来要发生的某个动作或者状态，常与tomorrow, next Sunday 等表示将来的时间状语连用；一般过去时表示过去某个时间发生的动作或者存在的状态，常与yesterday, last Sunday等表示过去的时间状语连用。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见107页)

词汇过关

一、读一读，划掉各组中不是同类的单词。

1. cold	warm	snow	windy
2. sit	sport	play	fly
3. sometimes	always	will	often
4. holiday	beach	sea	lake
5. aunt	friend	uncle	cousin

二、读一读，根据句意及首字母提示写出单词，补全句子。

1. Tom is a c_____ boy. He learns so fast.
2. I want to v_____ my grandmother and grandfather on Sunday evening.
3. The fish s_____ in the water.
4. It's too hot. We need a f_____. It can make us cool.
5. There are some big s_____ on the sea.

句型语法过关

三、读一读，用所给单词的正确形式填空。

go

1. I _____ to school by bus yesterday. Tomorrow, I _____ to school on foot. Now, I _____ to school by bike.

swim

2. Look, Jenny is _____ in the pool. She learned to _____ last summer and she _____ in the sea. She _____ in the lake next Sunday.

visit

3. Last Sunday, I _____ the Great Wall in Beijing. Now I _____ the Palace Museum. Next Sunday, I _____ the Summer Palace.

四、读一读，选择最恰当的一项。

( )1. It's cold outside, please _____ the door.
A. close B. open C. get

( )2. I didn't do my homework. My mother is very _____.
A. happy B. tired C. angry

( )3. We _____ pick flowers in the park. That is _____.
A. will; nice B. won't; wrong
C. will; wrong

( )4. I like to _____. That is hot, but it's good for my body.
A. swim B. sit in the sun
C. use the fan

( )5. The _____ in the sky are white and soft. Sometimes they look like animals.
A. flowers B. birds C. clouds

五、读一读，为下列问句选出恰当的答语。

( )1. What happens to trees in winter?
A. The trees lose their leaves. The leaves are red, yellow and orange.
B. Many trees don't have any leaves.
C. The trees have new, green leaves.

( )2. What do you like to do in summer?
A. I will swim in the sea.
B. I want to play sports with my friends.
C. I like to sit in the sun.

( )3. What did you do last summer?
A. I went on a trip to Sichuan.
B. I will visit my grandparents who live near a mountain.
C. I'm getting ready for the trip to Beijing.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(　　)4. Will you see a film with me tomorrow evening?

A. Yes, I will not.　B. No, I will not.

C. Yes, I do.

(　　)5. I know you will go shopping tomorrow. What else will you do?

A. I will watch TV.

B. I will go shopping with my mother.

C. I went to learn English.

综合运用过关

六、阅读短文，完成任务。

Dear Mum,

How are you?

I'm in the summer camp. I came here last Saturday. There are thirty-five students in our camp, and there are two teachers. The first day, we played games to meet each other. I tried to remember their names. The second day, we came to a river near the forest. We learned to fish there. In the evening, we slept in the tent. Before bed, we sat around, sang songs and told stories. Everyone was happy. Today, we went into the forest. There were so many trees, flowers and animals. We learned about some plants. That was interesting. Tonight, we will sleep in the tent again. Tomorrow, we will learn more plants, animals in the forest. And we will learn to ride a horse. I will be happy to do that. I will go home next Saturday. I miss you.

Love,

John

(一)根据短文内容判断正(T)误(F)。

(　　)1. This is a letter from John's mother to John.

(　　)2. It's summer now.

(　　)3. John went to the camp last Sunday.

(　　)4. John learned to swim on the first day.

(　　)5. John likes the camp.

(二)根据短文内容选择正确的一项。

(　　)1. This is _____.

A. a letter from John's mum

B. a letter from John

C. an email from John

(　　)2. There are _____ people in the summer camp.

A. thirty-four　B. thirty-five

C. thirty-seven

(　　)3. The summer camp is _____.

A. a school for learntng about animals

B. about learning something from nature (大自然)

C. for learning English and math

(　　)4. The first day, they played games because _____.

A. games can help them know about each other

B. they all like games

C. they like to play sports

(　　)5. They _____.

A. learned to fish from the river and will learn more about plants from the forest

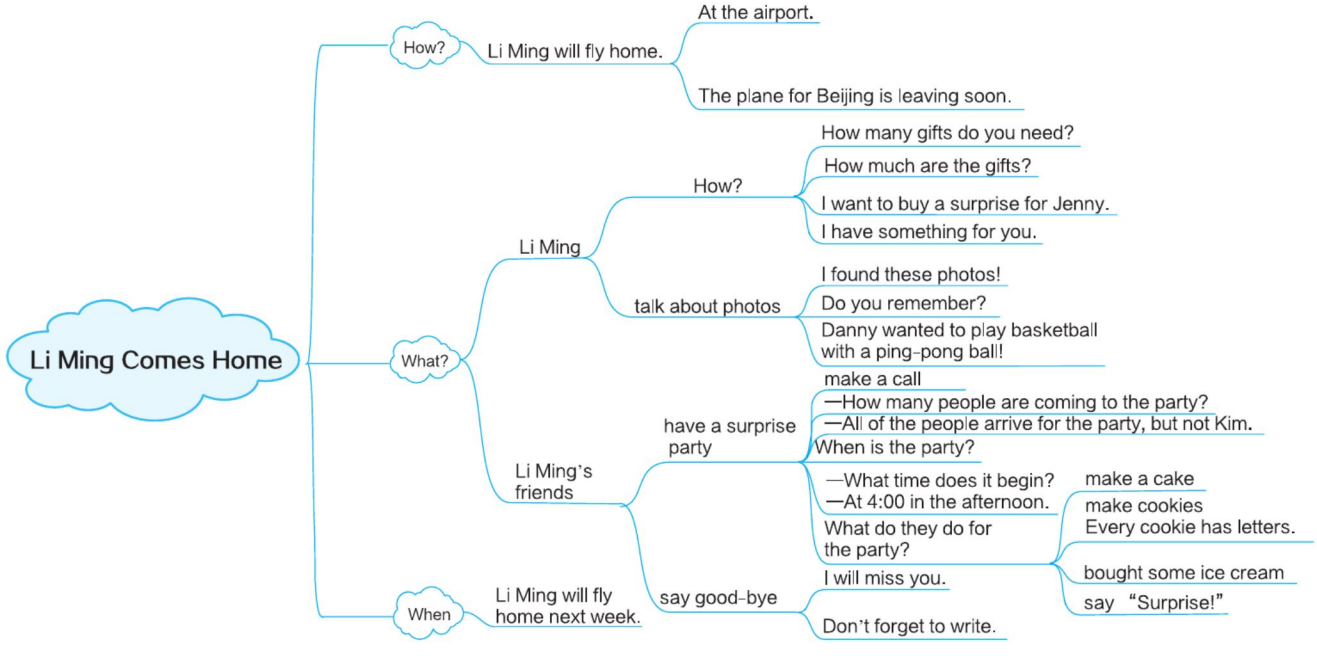
B. will learn to ride a bike next day

C. will go back home next Sunday

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 复习训练

知识导图



本单元重难、易错点提醒

1.打电话常用句式：Hello! It's Jenny calling.

2.every与all的区别:every的意思为"每一个"，强调个体，为单数，其后出现的名词或动词都要匹配其单数形式；all的意思是"所有的；全部"，指代整体，常用all of＋复数结构，表示"全部……"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见107页)

词汇过关

一、仔细观察表格找规律，写出以下动词的正确形式补全表格。

buy		bought	
	goes		will go
			will bring
teach			
	gives		

二、请选择第一题中的恰当单词补全下列句子。

1. I want to _____ some gifts for my cousin.
2. My mother _____ a new book to me for my birthday gift. I like it very much.
3. I _____ to the zoo with my friends tomorrow.
4. My father _____ me to play badminton last month. Now I can play it well.
5. Mr. Black _____ a box to school. What's in the box?

三、读一读，根据句意和首字母提示写出单词，补全句子。

1. I can't f_____ my cap. Where is it?
2. Tomorrow is my brother's birthday. Let's have a p_____ for him.
3. The art class begins at 8:30. I got here at 8:00. I'm e_____.
4. Could you t_____ me a story about the Great Wall?
5. Don't eat too much c_____. It's too sweet. That's not good for you.

句型语法过关

四、读一读，判断以下内容是（T）否（F）与图片相符。

( )1. This is a good gift from Canada.



( )2. This is a photo of Danny and Li Ming. They learned to skate. Li Ming learned fast.



( )3. We will have a party in our classroom. Now we are getting ready for the party.



( )4. This is a surprise party for my brother.



五、读一读，选择正确的一项。

( )1. They will _____ next Monday.

A. fly to home　　B. go to home fly

C. fly home

( )2. It's a surprise party for him. Please _____ him.

A. don't tell　B. tell　C. didn't tell

( )3. Every _____ to go to the new park to play.

A. students want　　B. student wants

C. students wants

( )4. We _____ want to go to the park.

A. every　　B. all　　C. else

( )5. We will _____ Canada. We will visit the CN Tower and Niagara Falls. They are famous and great.

A. leave　　B. leave in

C. leave for

六、读一读，根据汉语提供的语境选择恰当、得体的句子。（多选）

( ) 1. 当你给朋友打电话时，你会首先这样打招呼：

A. How are you?　　B. Hi!

C. Hello!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

( )2. 你会这样向电话那头的人介绍自己：
A. This is Linda calling.
B. I'm Linda.
C. It's Linda speaking.

( )3. 挂断电话时，你会这样告别：
A. See you then! B. Good-bye!
C. See you!

( )4. 当你觉得朋友的建议挺不错时，你会这样回应：
A. Oh, that's wrong! B. Good idea!
C. Great!

( )5. 当你想知道英语课开始的时间时，你会这样问：
A. When is the party?
B. What time does the English class begin?
C. When is the English class?

综合运用过关

七、读一读，选择正确的一项补全短文。

It 1. _____ fine last Sunday. I 2. _____ to the zoo with my friends. There 3. _____ many animals. We 4. _____ monkeys eating bananas. The tigers 5. _____ meat. The elephant 6. _____ big and strong. We 7. _____ a good time.

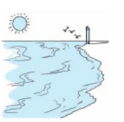
Next Sunday, we 8. _____ to the new park by bus. We 9. _____ kites there. We 10. _____ very happy.

( )1. A. is B. was C. are
( )2. A. walk B. come C. went
( )3. A. are B. were C. have
( )4. A. saw B. see C. watch
( )5. A. eats B. eating C. ate
( )6. A. was B. is C. were
( )7. A. have B. has C. had
( )8. A. go B. went C. will go
( )9. A. will fly B. flew C. fly
( )10. A. are B. will be C. will are

八、阅读短文，完成任务。

One day, a man drove a car on a small road in the countryside. He was very happy to see the big farm. Then, he saw a woman driving a car towards him. The woman opened the window of the car and yelled "PIG!" The man was very angry. He thought, "I don't know her. Why does she call me a pig? That's not good!" So he opened his window of the car and shouted back, "I'm not a pig! You are a pig!"

After a while, he drove the car to turn left. He saw five big, fat pigs running on the road! CRASH! The car crashed into a big pig!

( )1. "Countryside" means _____.
A. 
B. 
C. 

( )2. The man was happy because _____.
A. he saw a big farm
B. he saw a woman driving towards him
C. he saw big pigs

( )3. The woman was _____.
A. very angry so she shouted at the man
B. very kind to remind(提醒) the man to watch out for the pigs
C. very bad to shout to the man

( )4. The man was _____.
A. angry with the woman
B. happy to hear what the woman said
C. sad to hear "PIG!"

( )5. There were _____ on the road.
A. many cars B. some pigs
C. a farm

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 过关检测卷

时间:40 分钟　满分:100 分

	听力(30 分)				笔试(70 分)						总
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	分
得　分											

第一部分　听力(30 分)

听力测试

一 听录音,选出你所听到的单词。(5 分)

( )1. A. football　B. basketball　C. ping-pong
( )2. A. those　B. that　C. this
( )3. A. light　B. small　C. heavy
( )4. A. taught　B. thought　C. brought
( )5. A. player　B. teacher　C. singer

二 听录音,选择与其相符的图片。(5 分)

( )1. A. 　B. 　C. 
( )2. A. 　B. 　C. 
( )3. A. 　B. 　C. 
( )4. A. 　B. 　C. 
( )5. A. 　B. 　C. 

三 听录音,判断下列句子与所听内容是(T)否(F)相符。(10 分)

( )1. My brother's favourite sport is basketball.
( )2. I try to learn to swim in the pool.
( )3. Do you like green or blue?
( )4. He taught me to ride a bike.
( )5. We play games for fun in the park on Sundays.

四 听对话,选择正确的一项。(10 分)

( )1. Where are they?
A. In the park.　B. In the restaurant.　C. At the shop.

( )2. What does Tom want to buy?
A. He wants to buy some pencils.　B. He wants to buy some pencil boxes.
C. He wants to buy some pens.

( )3. How many pencils does Tom need?
A. One.　B. Three.　C. Five.

( )4. What's Jenny's favourite colour?
A. She likes blue best.　B. She likes red best.　C. She likes pink best.

( )5. How much is the pink pencil box?
A. It's five yuan.　B. It's ten yuan.　C. It's fifteen yuan.

第二部分　笔试(70 分)

五 根据图片或所给提示填空。(10 分)

1. "Can I help you?" _____ the man.
"Yes, please," _____ the girl.



2. The ping-pong ball is _____(轻的).
The basketball is _____.



3. I like _____ T-shirt.
I don't like _____ T-shirt.



4. Math is _____(容易的) for her, but it is _____ for him.



5. He likes _____ shoes.
He doesn't like _____ shoes.



姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

六 我会选。(10分)

( )1. —Tina, what fruit do you like _____?
—Watermelons.
A. best B. better C. good

( )2. —Would you like _____ rice and chicken?
—No, thanks. I am not hungry.
A. a B. some C. any

( )3. Do you want _____ play basketball?
A. to learn B. learn to C. to learn to

( )4. She is _____ the ball to me.
A. hit B. hiting C. hitting

( )5. They _____ many things at the shop yesterday.
A. buy B. brought C. bought

七 选词填空。(10分)

There is a big playground ___1___ our school. Many students in our school like to play sports ___2___. Some like to play basketball and some like to play football. ___3___ almost (几乎) all the boys like to play football. They often play football after school. Unlike(不像) boys, most ___4___ like to play ping-pong. They don't like to run in the sun.

We all like sports. It's good ___5___ us to play sports.

( )1. A. in B. on C. under

( )2. A. in the classroom B. on the playground C. in the room

( )3. A. So B. And C. Before

( )4. A. women B. girls C. boys

( )5. A. for B. from C. of

八 按要求完成句子。(15分)

1. I want those shirts. (改为单数句)
_____

2. We bought some vegetables in the supermarket. (改为否定句)
_____

3. Do you like this schoolbag? (用 that schoolbag 改为选择疑问句)
_____

4. ready, are, to, learn, you, play, to, basketball (?)(连词成句)
_____

5. won, team, which (?)(连词成句)
_____

九 阅读短文,选择正确答案。(10分) (建议用时:10分钟)

I am Bruce. I am 12 years old. My family's favourite sport is football. Last night, there was a football game in Green Stadium. After dinner, my father, my mother and I went to watch the game. The stadium is far from our home. We went there by taxi. After the game, we were excited. Here are some information for our tickets and our shopping list.

The Information of the Ticket:	Shopping List:
A grown-up: 120 yuan	Some snacks: 50 yuan
A child (<18 years old): 80 yuan	Three bottles of water: 9 yuan
Opening time: 20:00	Three flags: 30 yuan

( )1. _____ is my favourite sport.
A. Ping-pong B. Football C. Basketball

( )2. How did we go to the stadium?
A. We went to the stadium by bus.
B. We went to the stadium by car.
C. We went to the stadium by taxi.

( )3. The tickets cost(花费)_____ yuan totally(总共).
A. 540 B. 320 C. 100

( )4. —How much is a bottle of water?
—_____ yuan.
A. Three. B. Nine. C. Thirty.

( )5. We were _____ last night.
A. sad B. hot C. excited

十 写作。(15分)

你喜欢看体育比赛吗?请用英语描述一场你看过的比赛,可以是篮球、足球、乒乓球等。请写出比赛的时间、地点及结果等内容。

要求:1. 补全题目。2. 注意时态。3. 不少于8句话,语句通顺。

A _____ Game

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 过关检测卷

时间:40 分钟　满分:100 分

	听力(30 分)				笔试(70 分)							总
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	分
得　分												

第一部分　听力(30 分)

听力测试

一 听录音,选出你所听到单词的反义词或对应词。(5 分)

( )1. A. easy　B. healthy　C. heavy

( )2. A. after　B. next　C. difficult

( )3. A. bad　B. ask　C. big

( )4. A. light　B. answer　C. high

( )5. A. these　B. this　C. never

二 听录音,给下列图片排序。(5 分)







(　)　(　)　(　)　(　)　(　)

三 听录音,选出你所听到的句子。(10 分)

( )1. A. I had breakfast seven times a week.　B. I had breakfast five times last week.
C. I had breakfast once last week.

( )2. A. Before breakfast, she washes her face.
B. After breakfast, she does exercise in the park.
C. Before breakfast, she does exercise in the park.

( )3. A. How often do you eat tomatoes?　B. How often do you eat vegetables?
C. How often do you eat potatoes?

( )4. A. You need to eat more vegetables.　B. You need to eat more fruit.
C. You need to do more exercise.

( )5. A. Do you work hard at school?　B. Does she work hard at sports?
C. Does she work hard at school?

四 听对话,选择正确答案。(10 分)

( )1. Kim brushes her teeth _____ dinner.
A. after　B. before　C. for

( )2. Kim wants strong and healthy _____.
A. face　B. teeth　C. hands

( )3. Kim does her homework for about _____ minutes.
A. twenty　B. thirty　C. forty

( )4. Kim cleans her bedroom on _____.
A. Saturdays　B. Sundays　C. Fridays

( )5. The teacher says finally, "_____."
A. Goodbye　B. Good job　C. Good work

第二部分　笔试(70 分)

五 写一写,根据图片或首字母提示补全句子。(5 分)




1. The man is s_____.

2. E_____ can make our bodies healthy.

3. —How many h_____ are there in a day?
—Twenty-four.

4. —What day is it b_____ Friday?
—It's Thursday.



5. Look! He can jump very _____.

六 单项选择。(5 分)

( )1. I go to bed _____ I finish my homework.
A. so　B. when　C. after

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )2. _____ isn't good for your health.

A. Eating vegetables B. Brushing teeth

C. Eating too much junk food

( )3. _____ is exercise.

A. To play the basketball B. Playing basketball C. Play basketball

( )4. —_____ do you brush your teeth?

—Twice a day.

A. How often B. How many C. How much

( )5. We play basketball for _____ hour on Sunday.

A. an B. a C. the

七 连词成句。(10 分)

1. to, five, a, Jenny, goes, times, week, school (.)

_____

2. Kim, have, how, last, did, week, often, breakfast (?)

_____

3. should, you, vegetables, fruit, more, eat, and (.)

_____

4. you, have, to, want, do, teeth, healthy (?)

_____

5. after, plays, he, school, often, football (.)

_____

八 找出句子中的错误并改正。(10 分)

1. Do you healthy and strong? ( ) _____
   A B C
2. Vegetables are good of you. ( ) _____
   A B C
3. Playing ping-pong are exercise. ( ) _____
   A B C
4. How many minute do you walk? ( ) _____
   A B C
5. I think it is important work hard at school, at home and at sports. ( ) _____
   A B C

九 根据图片内容补全短文。(18 分)

In the morning, Mark 1. _____  at 7:00. First, he 2. _____ .

Next, he 3. _____ . Then he 4. _____ . After breakfast, he

5. _____ . He always 6. _____  before dinner. He 7. _____

 after dinner. And sometimes he runs in the park. 8. _____  is exercise.

We say to Mark, "9. _____,  Mark."

十 根据短文内容判断正(T)误(F)。(10 分) (建议用时:8 分钟)

To be tall and strong is a dream for a lot of boys. Jack is not different.

One day, Jack didn't do well in P. E. class. He went home unhappily.

"What's the matter?" Jack's father asked. "I want to be taller and stronger. What should I do? Can I take some special medicine (药)?" Jack asked sadly.

"Being healthy is more important," Jack's father said.

Jack's father was right. No special medicine can make him taller or stronger. First, Jack should eat three meals a day. He must eat more fruit and vegetables. Exercise is important, too. Jack should exercise every day.

( )1. To be tall and strong is a dream for a lot of girls.

( )2. Jack doesn't have the dream to be tall and strong.

( )3. Jack's father thought being healthy was more important.

( )4. Some special medicine can make Jack taller and stronger.

( )5. Jack should eat three meals a day and exercise every day.

十一 写作。(12 分)

运动使人健康。同学们,你们喜欢运动吗?你都喜欢哪些运动呢?你多久做一次运动?你会运动多长时间?请以"My Sports"为题,写一篇小作文吧!不少于 5 句话。

My Sports

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

期中检测卷

时间:60分钟　满分:100分

	听力(30分)				笔试(70分)						总
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	分
得　分											

第一部分　听力(30分)

听力测试

一 听录音,给下列图片排序。(5分)

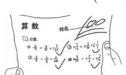






(　)　(　)　(　)　(　)　(　)

二 听录音,判断下列图片与所听内容是(T)否(F)相符。(5分)

1. 　(　)
2. 　(　)
3. 　(　)
4. 

(　)
5. 　(　)

三 听录音,为听到的问句选择恰当的答语。(10分)

(　)1. A. I like ping-pong best.　B. I play basketball and ping-pong.
C. Playing sports is my favourite.

(　)2. A. Yes, I do.　B. No, I don't.　C. I like this.

(　)3. A. I watched TV.　B. I listen to music.　C. I do my homework.

(　)4. A. I had breakfast six times.　B. He had breakfast seven times.
C. I have breakfast five times.

(　)5. A. I need to play sports.　B. About thirty minutes a day.
C. Running is exercise.

四 听对话,根据所听内容选择恰当的一项。(10分)

(　)1. What did Amy do last Sunday?
A. She played ping-pong.　B. She watched a ping-pong game.
C. She watched TV.

(　)2. Does Amy often play ping-pong?
A. Yes, she does.　B. No, she doesn't.
C. She likes playing ping-pong.

(　)3. How often does Amy exercise?
A. Once a week.　B. Once a day.　C. Twice a day.

(　)4. What's Amy's favourite sport?
A. Running.　B. Ping-pong.　C. Basketball.

(　)5. Is Amy healthy and strong?
A. Yes, she is.　B. No, she isn't.　C. We don't know.

第二部分　笔试(70分)

五 读一读,选出画线单词的对应词。(10分)

(　)1. Before breakfast, I wash my face and hands.
A. Again　B. After　C. For

(　)2. Can you catch the ball?
A. get　B. hit　C. throw

(　)3. Can I ask a question?
A. answer　B. say　C. said

(　)4. Those vegetables are good for you.
A. bad　B. nice　C. great

(　)5. The little cat is ill.
A. strong　B. sad　C. healthy

六 单项选择。(20分)

(　)1. I like basketball _____.
A. very　B. good　C. best

(　)2. Does he have _____ milk?
A. any　B. some　C. those

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

( )3. Whose bag is _____?
A. that B. those C. these

( )4. We watched them _____ basketball this afternoon.
A. playing B. play C. played

( )5. I am _____ the ball _____ you!
A. hit; to B. hitting; to C. hitting; at

( )6. Danny _____ he could hit the ball.
A. think B. thinking C. thought

( )7. He had breakfast _____ about 7:30 _____ the morning.
A. at; in B. on; in C. at; on

( )8. Linda _____ to school on foot.
A. go B. going C. goes

( )9. _____ helps _____ your body healthy and strong.
A. Run; make B. Running; make C. Running; making

( )10. What _____ do you do at school?
A. else B. too C. also

七 读一读,选择正确的一项补全对话。(10分)

A:1. _____
B:I often help my mother.
A:2. _____
B:I sometimes clean the room and water the flowers.
A:3. _____
B:Yes, I do.
A:4. _____
B:I like swimming best.
A:5. _____
B:Twice a week.

A. Do you always play sports?
B. What do you often do at home?
C. What's your favourite sport?
D. How often do you swim?
E. What else do you do at home?

八 根据短文内容,判断正(T)误(F)。(10分)

(建议用时:6分钟)

There are seven days in a week. My favourite day is Saturday. On Saturday, I don't go to school. I often get up at 7:30. Before breakfast, I always wash my hands and brush my teeth. After breakfast, I often read a book. I like reading. Sometimes I clean the room. In the afternoon, I often go shopping. I buy some vegetables and fruit for my family. They are good for our bodies. In the evening, I often watch TV with my parents. Sometimes I listen to music in my bedroom. Saturdays are fun.

( )1. I'm a student.
( )2. I often read a book.
( )3. I often go shopping with my family in the afternoon.
( )4. Vegetables are good for our bodies.
( )5. I sometimes watch TV with my parents on Saturday evening.

九 阅读短文,选择正确的一项。(10分)

(建议用时:8分钟)

Zhang Peng is a boy. He is from China. He is tall, but not strong. He likes sports. He wants to be a player. He wants to exercise to make him strong. He exercise twice a day. He often runs in the morning. He runs for about thirty minutes a day. In the afternoon, he often plays basketball with his friends after school. On Saturday and Sunday afternoon, he goes to learn to play basketball. He doesn't eat too much meat. He eats vegetables and fruit. They are good for his body.

( )1. Zhang Peng exercises _____ a day.
A. once B. twice C. three times

( )2. Zhang Peng plays basketball _____ a week.
A. seven times B. five times C. six times

( )3. What player should Zhang Peng want to be?
A. A basketball player. B. A swimmer. C. A ping-pong player.

( )4. Zhang Peng doesn't _____.
A. run in the morning B. eat too much meat C. eat vegetables

( )5. Zhang Peng _____ on Saturday.
A. doesn't run B. doesn't play basketball
C. learns to play basketball

十 写作。(10分)

你经常做运动吗?你最喜欢什么运动?你多久做一次这种运动?你和谁一起做这项运动呢?这项运动带给你什么益处呢?请给大家介绍一下吧。题目自拟,不少于6句话。

密 封 线

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 过关检测卷

时间:40 分钟　满分:100 分

题号	听力(30 分)				笔试(70 分)							总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得分												

第一部分　听力(30 分)

听力测试

一 听录音,选出与所听内容相符的一项,将其序号填入题前括号内。(5 分)

( )1. A. 　B. 　C. 

( )2. A. 　B. 　C. 

( )3. A. 　B. 　C. 

( )4. A. 　B. 　C. 

( )5. A. 　B. 　C. 

二 听录音,给图片标序号。(5 分)

(　)　(　)　(　)　(　)　(　)

三 听录音,选出与所听对话内容相符的一项。(10 分)

( )1. A. Tom likes winter best.　B. Peter likes winter best.
C. Tom's favourite season is summer.

( )2. A. In summer, Amy likes to swim.
B. In summer, Lucy likes to drink cold juice.
C. In summer, Lucy likes to swim.

( )3. A. We went to a lake.　B. We will go to a lake.
C. I like to go on trips.

( )4. A. I will stay at home and eat ice cream.　B. I ate ice cream.
C. I'm eating some ice cream.

( )5. A. Sam will not come to the party.　B. Sam will come to the party on time.
C. Sam will go to the party by bus.

四 听短文,将相对应的图片的序号填在恰当的位置。(10 分)

A. 　B. 　C. 　D. 　E. 

F. 　G. 　H. 　I. 　J. 

	Will	Will Not
John		
Tom		

第二部分　笔试(70 分)

五 读一读,根据图片及首字母提示写出单词,补全对话。(10 分)

1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 　5. 

1. It's cold outside. Please c_____ the door.
2. We need a new f_____. The weather is too hot.
3. Oh, no! My mother is too a_____.
4. Can you see the big s_____ on the sea?
5. Tony is a c_____ boy.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

六 读一读，用所给单词的正确形式填空。（10分）

1. Where _____ (do) you go last Sunday?
2. I learned to _____ (swim) last summer.
3. He will not _____ (go) to school by bike.
4. They _____ (see) a film tomorrow evening.
5. Let's _____ (go) to the sea next Sunday.

七 单项选择。（10分）

(　　)1. What _____ trees in different seasons?
A. happens to　　B. happened　　C. happen to

(　　)2. Many trees don't _____ leaves.
A. has some　　B. have some　　C. have any

(　　)3. He _____ ride a bike to school.
A. is not　　B. do not　　C. will not

(　　)4. He wants to pick some flowers _____ his mother.
A. of　　B. for　　C. to

(　　)5. I will _____ Beijing for summer holiday.
A. be in　　B. am in　　C. be on

八 按要求完成句子。（10分）

1. His father will watch TV in the afternoon.（改成否定句）

_____

2. They will <u>have an English class</u> tomorrow afternoon.（对画线部分提问）

_____

3. Sam will go to China this summer <u>because he wants to learn Chinese</u>.（对画线部分提问）

_____

4. Will you fly kites this Sunday?（作否定回答）

_____

5. I will go to school on foot tomorrow.（写出同义句）

I _____ _____ _____ _____ tomorrow.

九 读一读，选择正确的句子补全对话。（10分）

A：1. _____

B：My favourite season is winter.

A：It's too cold. 2. _____

B：Because I like the snow. 3. _____

A：I like summer. The trees have green leaves in summer.

B：Yes. 4. _____

A：I will go to the sea and play on the beach.

5. _____

B：I will visit my aunt and uncle. They are in Chengdu.

A：That's a wonderful place.

B：Yes.

A. What will you do this summer?
B. What's your favourite season?
C. Where will you go this summer?
D. Why do you like winter?
E. What about you?

十 阅读短文，完成任务。（10分）

（建议用时：8分钟）

There are four seasons in a year. What's my favourite season? It's spring. Next spring, I will go to the mountain. There are many trees in the mountain. In spring, the plants—the trees, the grass and the flowers will have new leaves. The flowers there will be very beautiful. I will take many photos there. I will go camping with my parents there. We will sleep in the tents. In the evening, we can look at the stars. And we will ride a horse. We will have a good time.

（一）根据短文内容判断正（T）误（F）。

(　　)1. I like summer best.

(　　)2. We will be happy there.

（二）根据短文内容选择正确答案。

(　　)3. Plants mean（意思是）_____.
A. cats and dogs　　B. animals　　C. trees, grass and flowers

(　　)4. I will not _____ there.
A. swim or fish　　B. ride a horse　　C. take photos

(　　)5. The tents mean _____.
A. 床　　B. 帐篷　　C. 沙发

十一 写作。（10分）

即将到来的这个暑假是与众不同的，因为大家要离开生活、学习了六年的学校，步入初中（middle school）。你准备做些什么来度过这个特别的暑假呢？请自拟题目，以不少于6句话的内容来介绍一下自己的想法。要注意时态的正确使用哦。

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 过关检测卷

时间:40 分钟　满分:100 分

题号	听力(30 分)				笔试(70 分)						总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	
得分											

第一部分　听力(30 分)

听力测试

一 听录音,判断下列图片与所听内容是(T)否(F)相符。(5 分)

1. 　(　　)
2. 　(　　)
3. 　(　　)
4. 　(　　)
5. 　(　　)

二 听录音,为所听问句选择恰当的答语。(5 分)

(　　)1. A. I need five.　　B. There are five.　　C. I have ten.

(　　)2. A. I went to the park.　　B. I will go to the park.　　C. I'm walking to the park.

(　　)3. A. I am reading a book.　　B. I was in the cinema.　　C. I will go to the zoo.

(　　)4. A. Yes, you may.　　B. No, I won't.　　C. Yes, I do.

(　　)5. A. It's 4:00.　　B. It's on Monday morning.　　C. At 4:00 on Monday afternoon.

三 听录音,将人物与相应的活动连线。(10 分)

Tom　　Sam　　Lily　　Lucy　　Jack

1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 　5. 

四 听录音,根据短文内容选择正确的一项。(10 分)

(　　)1. Who is the party for?
A. It's for Tom.　　B. It's for Peter.　　C. It's for Jack.

(　　)2. Why will they have a party?
A. Because Peter is a new student.　　B. Because Peter will fly home soon.
C. Because it's Tom's birthday.

(　　)3. Who will come to the party?
A. John's family and friends.　　B. Sam's family and friends.
C. Tom's family and Peter's friends.

(　　)4. When will the party begin?
A. At 6:30 in the evening.　　B. At 3:30 in the afternoon.
C. At 4:30 in the afternoon.

(　　)5. Where will they have the party?
A. At Tom's house.　　B. At Peter's house.　　C. At Jack's house.

第二部分　笔试(70 分)

五 读一读,将所给的字母按正确的顺序排列成单词,补全句子。(10 分)

1. We will have a (p t y r a) _____ for our teachers.
2. My mother bought me a birthday (c k a e) _____.
3. Please don't be (l t a e) _____.
4. Can you (h r e a) _____ something?
5. My mother will (t l l e) _____ me a story about the moon.

六 单项选择。(10 分)

(　　)1. Here _____ some red flags for you.
A. am　　B. is　　C. are

(　　)2. I got some good gifts _____ the U. K..
A. from　　B. of　　C. at

(　　)3. My sister is _____ sing a song for my mother.
A. gets ready to　　B. getting ready to　　C. get ready for

(　　)4. His father _____ him to play ping-pong, but he hit his hand.
A. teach　　B. taught　　C. teaching

(　　)5. I saw a photo _____ my family.
A. of　　B. with　　C. to

(　　)6. Hello, it's Mary _____.
A. call　　B. /　　C. calling

(　　)7. Do you know _____ the party?
A. of　　B. about　　C. for

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

(　　)8. I will leave _____ Beijing tomorrow morning.
A. for　　B. to　　C. at

(　　)9. All of the _____ are delicious.
A. apple　　B. gift　　C. cookies

(　　)10. I have _____ my grandmother.
A. something for　　B. everything of　　C. any for

七 为下列照片选择正确的描述。(10分)

1. (　　)　2. (　　)　3. (　　)　4. (　　)　5. (　　)







A. Look at this photo. I went to the park with my friends. We played there. We were happy.
B. It was my brother's birthday. We had a party for him. He got many gifts.
C. We went shopping in Beijing. I bought some gifts for my family and friends.
D. My father taught me to fish. I sat near the lake and waited.
E. I learned to ride a bike. I fell down. I hurt my leg.

八 读一读,选择正确的句子补全对话。(10分)

A:Hello?
B:1. _____ Is that Jack?
A:Yes, this is Jack.
B:2. _____
A:Sure. 3. _____
B:On Friday afternoon.
A:4. _____
B:At 4:00. Please don't be late.
A:5. _____
B:Great! See you.

A. I will get there early.
B. It's Tom calling.
C. What time does it begin?
D. Would you come to a party for Mr. Green?
E. When is the party?

九 阅读短文,完成任务。(20分)　(建议用时:15分钟)

Last Sunday morning, Mr. Smith and his family got up early. They had milk, bread and eggs for breakfast. After breakfast, they went shopping at 9:30. They got to the big supermarket at ten o'clock. There were many things in the supermarket. Mr. Smith bought some vegetables and fruit for his family. And he bought a doll for his little daughter, Mary Smith. He bought some books for Mrs. Smith. He bought a toy car for his son, Jack Smith. They had lunch at a big restaurant.

After lunch, Mr. Smith drove along the street. He couldn't find the way home. Then he saw a policeman.

"Excuse me, sir. Where am I?" asked Mr. Smith. The policeman looked at him and their car. "You're in your car, sir," he said.

(一)根据短文内容判断正(T)误(F)。(10分)

(　　)1. Mr. Smith and his family went shopping on Sunday evening.
(　　)2. Mr. Smith bought some vegetables and fruit for his family.
(　　)3. They had lunch at home.
(　　)4. On their way home, Mr. Smith was lost.
(　　)5. The policeman's answer can help Mr. Smith find the way home.

(二)根据短文内容选择正确的一项。(10分)

(　　)1. They _____ at nine thirty.
A. got up　　B. had breakfast　　C. went shopping

(　　)2. They went shopping _____.
A. in the afternoon　　B. by car　　C. to buy clothes

(　　)3. Mary Smith is _____.
A. a boy　　B. Mr. Smith's daughter　　C. Mr. Smith's son

(　　)4. Mr. Smith bought _____ for Jack.
A. a toy car　　B. fruit　　C. some books

(　　)5. The policeman felt _____.
A. happy　　B. sad　　C. surprised

十 写作。(10分)

假定你有一名同学John要离开你们班回自己的国家(the U.K.)读书了,请你为他设计一次告别聚会,请列出时间、地点、人物及聚会上会进行的活动。

要求:先补全题目。可以以表格形式来分条介绍,也可以以短文的形式来介绍。

A _____ Party Plan

密　封　线

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

期末检测卷

时间:60分钟　满分:100分

	听力(30分)				笔试(70分)						总
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	分
得　分											

第一部分　听力(30分)

听力测试

一 听录音,为下列图片排序。(5分)







(　　)　(　　)　(　　)　(　　)　(　　)

二 听录音,为所听的问句选择恰当的答语。(5分)

(　　)1. A. Yes, I do.　　B. Yes, I will.　　C. Sure.

(　　)2. A. I am having breakfast.　　B. I like to brush my teeth.
C. I wash my hands and face.

(　　)3. A. I went on a trip.　　B. I will go on a trip.　　C. I'm going to the sea.

(　　)4. A. At six o'clock.　　B. I often get up early.　　C. I get up early every day.

(　　)5. A. I played a game with my friends.
B. I went to the park with my friends.
C. I will play with my friends.

三 听录音,在表格的恰当位置画√。(10分)

	do one's homework	clean one's room	watch TV	see a film	visit family
Jack					
Tom					
Amy					
Rose					

四 听短文,选择方框中的词填表。(10分)

once　twice　swim　basketball　ping-pong

Names	Likes	How often?
Steven	1. _____	2. _____ a week
John	3. _____	4. _____ a day
Jenny	5. _____	
Tom	football	five times a week

第二部分　笔试(70分)

五 读一读,根据图片及首字母提示写出单词,补全句子。(10分)

1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 　5. 

1. We need to play s_____ to be healthy.
2. His father is a p_____.
3. Look, that man is so s_____!
4. There is a l_____ near the mountain.
5. We h_____ with our ears.

六 单项选择。(20分)

(　　)1. I don't have _____ toys now.
A. some　　B. any　　C. this

(　　)2. Do you like these _____?
A. T-shirt　　B. ping-pong　　C. shirts

(　　)3. They _____ their team _____ a basketball game.
A. watch; plays　　B. watched; play　　C. watched; plays

(　　)4. Linda had breakfast five times _____ week.
A. last　　B. next　　C. a

(　　)5. Tom _____ his hands and _____ his teeth before breakfast.
A. washes; brushes　　B. brushes; washes　　C. wash; brush

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )6. _____ more vegetables and fruit _____ your body healthy.
A. Eat; make B. Eat; helps C. Eating; helps make

( )7. In summer, trees have green _____.
A. leaf B. leaves C. leafs

( )8. I like _____ the beach.
A. playing on B. play on C. playing with

( )9. Lucy will not _____ this evening.
A. goes shopping B. go shopping C. go shop

( )10. Tony _____ to play catch _____ a basketball.
A. wanted; with B. wants; for C. wanted; to

七 读一读,选择正确的句子补全对话。(10分)

A:1. _____
B:I'm getting ready for the summer camp.
A:2. _____
B:Next Monday.
A:3. _____
B:We will go to a mountain near our city.
A:4. _____
B:We will go there by bus.
A:5. _____
B:We will take trips around the forest and learn about some animals and plants in the forest.
A:Sounds great!
B:Yes, and I will have a great time.

A. What will you do there?
B. What are you doing?
C. How will you go there?
D. When will you go?
E. Where will you go?

八 根据对话内容,判断正(T)误(F)。(10分) (建议用时:6分钟)

Lily:Hi, Mike! Where do you want to go for your summer holiday?
Mike:I want to go to China with my family.
Lily:How will you get there from the U. S. ?
Mike:By plane. What about you, Lily?
Lily:I want to go to Canada and China.
Mike:And then, how will you get there?
Lily:I want to go to Canada from the U. S. by plane, and then go to China from Canada by ship.
Mike:Wow, it's a long trip! Maybe, we'll meet in China.
Lily:Ha ha, I hope so!

( )1. Mike and Lily will both go to China.
( )2. Mike will go to China by ship.
( )3. Mike and Lily will both go to Canada.
( )4. Mike and Lily live in the U. S. .
( )5. Mike and Lily want to meet in China.

九 阅读短文,选择正确的一项。(10分) (建议用时:8分钟)

My grandfather has a big farm. He usually gets up at 6:30 in the morning. Before breakfast, he often feeds the horses and the pigs. After breakfast, he often goes to the supermarket to buy some food. Then he milks the cows and picks up eggs from the chickens. My grandmother, my uncle and aunt often help him feed the animals and clean the houses.

When the sun goes down, the town is dark and quiet. My grandfather often goes to visit his old friends and talks with them after dinner.

( )1. My grandfather and grandmother are _____.
A. living in the city B. teachers C. farmers

( )2. There are _____ on the farm.
A. many animals B. some dogs C. many trees

( )3. My grandfather _____ on the farm.
A. buy food B. visit friends C. feeds animals and milks cows

( )4. The town is _____ in the evening.
A. dark and quiet B. small and nice C. clean and quiet

( )5. My grandfather likes to _____.
A. buy vegetables at the supermarket
B. visit and talk with his friends in the evening
C. feed the animals and clean the houses

十 写作。(10分)

小学六年以来,一定有一些事情令你难忘。请自拟题目,并把一件难忘的事情介绍给大家。要求:1. 题目自拟,注意时态。2. 不少于6句话。

_____
_____
_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料



参考答案及点拨

六年级 英语 下 JJ版

检测卷部分

Unit 1 过关检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. My favourite sport is basketball.
2. I like this T-shirt.
3. The basketball is heavy.
4. This afternoon, they taught each other a sport.
5. He is a good player.

二、1. Of all sports, I like ping-pong best.
2. Tom hits his hand. Poor Tom!
3. She is playing computer games.
4. We went to the park yesterday.
5. She can fly the kite very high.

三、1. My brother's favourite sport is football.
2. I try to learn to swim in the pool.
3. Do you like yellow or blue?
4. He taught me to ride a bike.
5. We play games for fun in the park on Saturdays.

四、**W**: Hello, Tom. What do you want to buy?
M: Hi, Jenny. I want to buy some pencils. What about you?
W: I want to buy a pencil box. Let's see.
M: Okay.
M: Excuse me. Do you have any pencils?
Salesman: Yes, I'll show you! Here they are!
M: Thanks.
Salesman: How many pencils do you want?
M: Five. How much are these?
Salesman: These are two yuan. Those are three yuan.
M: I want these, please.
Salesman: Here you are.
M: Thanks.
M: Look at these pencil boxes. What colour do you like, Jenny?
W: I like this pink one. Pink is my favourite colour. And it is only ten yuan.

答案：

一、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. A
二、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. A
三、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
四、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B
五、1. asks; answers 2. light; heavy 3. this; that 4. easy; difficult 5. these; those
六、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. C
七、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. A
八、1. I want this shirt.
2. We didn't buy any vegetables in the supermarket.
3. Do you like this schoolbag or that schoolbag?
4. Are you ready to learn to play basketball?
5. Which team won?
九、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C
十、
A Football Game
My favourite sport is football. I like to watch football games. Last Sunday afternoon, I watched a football game between my class and Class One. My class was the Blue Team. Class One was the Orange Team. Everyone played hard. I yelled for my class. The score was 5 to 3. We won. We were very excited.

Unit 2 过关检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. ill 2. before 3. good 4. low 5. always
二、1. I made my lunch. 2. I help my mother.
3. Walking is exercise.
4. I do exercise every day.
5. I can reach my arm up high.
三、1. I had breakfast five times last week.
2. Before breakfast, she does exercise in the park.
3. How often do you eat tomatoes?
4. You need to eat more fruit.
5. Does she work hard at school?
四、**Teacher**: What do you do after dinner, Kim?
Kim: I brush my teeth.
Teacher: Why?
Kim: Because I want strong and healthy teeth.
Teacher: What else do you do after dinner?
Kim: I do my homework.
Teacher: How many minutes do you do your homework?
Kim: About thirty minutes.
Teacher: Do you clean your bedroom?
Kim: Yes, I clean my bedroom on Sundays.
Teacher: Good work.

答案：

一、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. C
二、1 2 3 5 4
三、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C
四、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. C
五、1. strong 2. Exercise 3. hours 4. before 5. high
六、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A
七、1. Jenny goes to school five times a week.
2. How often did Kim have breakfast last week?
3. You should eat more vegetables/fruit and fruit/vegetables.
4. Do you want to have healthy teeth?
5. He often plays football after school.
八、1. A Are 2. C for 3. B is
4. B minutes 5. B to work hard
九、1. gets up 2. washes his face
3. brushes his teeth 4. has breakfast
5. goes to school 6. does his homework
7. washes the dishes 8. Running
9. Good work
十、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
十一、
My Sports
Exercise helps make our bodies healthy and strong. My favourite sport is ping-pong. I play ping-pong three times a week. That's an hour and a half a week. I like to play ping-pong with my friends after school. I also like to run. I run for thirty minutes every morning.

期中检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. I always wear a T-shirt to play sports.
2. He bought many books this morning.
3. They are playing football.
4. He is yelling.
5. The ball hits his head.
二、1. He washes his hands before breakfast.
2. Football is his favourite sport.
3. She gets up in the morning.
4. It's difficult for him.
5. He plays on the computer.
三、1. What sports do you play?
2. Do you like this book or that one?
3. What did you do last night?
4. How often did you have breakfast last week?
5. How many minutes do you exercise?
四、**M**: Hello, Amy. What did you do last Sunday?
W: Hi, Peter. I watched a ping-pong game at school.
M: Do you often play ping-pong?
W: No, I don't. I play ping-pong once a week.
M: How often do you exercise? Once a week?
W: No. I exercise twice a day. I run in the morning and play basketball in the afternoon.
M: What's your favourite sport?
W: I like basketball best. I often play with my friends.
M: You look healthy and strong.
W: Yes. Exercise helps make my body healthy and strong.

答案：

一、3 1 4 2 5
二、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
三、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. B
四、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. A
五、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. C
六、1. C **点拨**：like... best 指“最喜欢……”。
2. A **点拨**：C 项应搭配复数使用，B 项用于肯定句，所以答案为 A。
3. A **点拨**：通过 bag 和 is 两个词，可以判断出空格处应填与单数匹配的词，所以答案是 A。
4. B **点拨**：此题考查 watch 的用法，watch somebody do something，此处应使用动词原形。
5. B **点拨**：第一个空前有 be 动词 am，所以此处应填现在分词，排除 A 选项，hit the ball to somebody 指“把球打向某人”，所以答案为 B。
6. C **点拨**：由 could 可知此句用一般过去时，所以选择 thought。
7. A **点拨**：在几点几分用介词 at，在上午用介词 in，所以答案为 A。
8. C **点拨**：Linda 为人名，是第三人称单数，所以答案为 C。
9. B **点拨**：此题考查动名词作主语及 help 的用法。help 后出现的动词应使用原形，所以此题选 B。
10. A **点拨**：too 也用于句末。also 也用于句中，else 与 what 构成特殊疑问词。
七、1. B 2. E 3. A 4. C 5. D
八、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
九、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. C
十、
My Favourite Sport
I like to play sports. Of all sports, I like

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

basketball best. I often play basketball after school. I play basketball five times a week. I like to play basketball with my friends. We play basketball on the playground. Playing basketball makes me happy and healthy.

Unit 3 过关检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. It's cool and windy. Trees lose their leaves.
2. I like to sit in the sun in summer.
3. I will play on the beach.
4. Last summer, they went on trips.
5. The children will play football.

二、 Tomorrow is Saturday. In the morning, I will see a film and go shopping with my mother. And then, I will make lunch. In the afternoon, I will read books. In the evening, I will have dinner in the restaurant.

三、1. A: Which season do you like best, Tom?
B: Summer. What about you, Peter?
A: Me too.
2. A: Hi, Amy. What do you like to do in summer?
B: Hi, Lucy. I like to swim.
3. A: Where will you go this summer?
B: We will go to a lake.
4. A: What will you do this Saturday?
B: I will stay at home and eat ice cream.
5. A: Will you come to the party, Sam?
B: Yes, I will. I will go there on time.

四、 Tomorrow is Sunday. What will John and Tom do? John will not go on a trip. He will stay at home. He will do his homework in the morning. And then he will clean his room. In the afternoon, He will watch TV and listen to music. Tom will not go shopping with his father. He will not learn to swim. He will learn to fish in the morning. In the afternoon, he will visit his grandparents. And he will see a film in the evening.

答案：

一、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B

二、2 5 1 4 3

三、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B

四、

	Will	Will Not
John	A J B E	H
Tom	D G I	F C

五、1. close 2. fan 3. angry 4. ship 5. clever

六、1. did **点拨：**last Sunday"上周日"，为过去的时间，所以此句使用过去时。
2. swim **点拨：**learn to + 动词原形。
3. go **点拨：**will 或 will not 后使用动词原形。
4. will see **点拨：**tomorrow evening"明天晚上"，为将来的时间，应使用一般将来时。
5. go **点拨：**let's 后接动词原形。

七、1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A

八、1. His father will not watch TV in the afternoon.
点拨：含有 will 的句子变成否定句，只要在 will 后加 not 就可以了。
2. What will they do tomorrow afternoon?
点拨：have an English class 部分被画线，指我们不知道明天下午他们会做什么，所以用 what 来提问。
3. Why will Sam go to China this summer?
点拨：针对 because 后的内容来提问，指要询问原因，因此用 why 来提问。
4. No, I will not. / No, I won't.
5. will walk to school

九、1. B 2. D 3. E 4. C 5. A

十、(一)1. F 2. T
(二)3. C **方法点拨：**此题需根据上下文来寻找答案，在出现 plants 单词的句子中，列出了 plants 的类别，可以得知 plants 为植物的意思。
4. A
5. B **方法点拨：**此题也需要根据上下文来判断。从原文中可以看到，我们要在 tents 里睡觉，再结合他们去山里这个前提，所以答案应该是"帐篷"。

十一、

My Summer Holiday

Summer is coming. This summer holiday, I will leave my school and go to the middle school. This summer, I will say good-bye to my teachers and friends. I will go on a trip to see some interesting places. I will learn math and English for middle school. I will read books. I will play with my friends. I will have a wonderful holiday.

Unit 4 过关检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. Here are some little flags.
2. I found some photos of my friends.
3. Let's have a good-bye party.
4. Let's make some cookies.
5. Sam is calling his friends.

二、1. How many gifts do you need?
2. What are you doing?
3. Where were you last night?
4. Will you tell him about the party?
5. What time does the party begin?

三、 We'll have a birthday party for Jack. Tom will buy some ice cream for the party. Sam will give Jack some gifts. Lily wants to make some cookies. Lucy will sing a song for Jack. What will Jack do? He will eat his birthday cake!

四、 Let's have a party for Peter. He will fly home next week. Let's invite Tom's family and Peter's friends to the party. The party will begin at 4:30 this Sunday afternoon. All of us will go to Tom's house. Peter is living with Tom. Let's have a wonderful party for him.

答案：

一、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F

二、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. C

三、1—Lily 2—Tom 3—Lucy 4—Sam 5—Jack

四、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. A

五、1. party 2. cake 3. late 4. hear 5. tell

六、1. C 2. A 3. B
4. B **点拨：**由"…he hit his hand."可知这是一般过去时态的句子，否则 hit 应为 hits，故应选 teach 的过去式 taught。
5. A 6. C 7. B 8. A
9. C **点拨：**all of 为"全部的，所有的"，接可数名词的复数形式。
10. A

七、1. C 2. E 3. A 4. D 5. B

八、1. B 2. D 3. E 4. C 5. A

九、(一)1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
(二)1. C 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C

十、

A Good-bye Party Plan

Hi, class. John will leave for the U.K. next week. Let's have a good-bye party for him. It's a surprise party. Please don't tell him. Let's have the party at 400 on Thursday afternoon in our classroom. Peter will invite all of our teachers to come to the party. We will decorate our classroom on Thursday morning. Let's make a big cake. We can bring some food and drinks. We will have a great time.

期末检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. Of all sports, I like ping-pong best.
2. I brush my teeth twice a day.
3. I will learn to swim this summer.
4. We will make a cake for our grandpa's birthday.
5. My mother often tells a story to my little sister before bed.

二、1. Can you teach me to fish?
2. What do you do before breakfast?
3. What will you do this summer?
4. When did you get up this morning?
5. Where did you go last Sunday?

三、 Tomorrow is Sunday. What will my friends do? Jack will do his homework and watch TV. Tom will clean his room, visit his grandparents and do his homework. Amy will do her homework and see a film with her friends. Rose will clean her room, watch TV and visit her cousin.

四、 Tom has many friends. They all like to play sports. Steven likes to play basketball. He plays basketball twice a week. John likes to play ping-pong. He plays ping-pong once a day. Jenny likes to swim. Tom is a football player. He plays on the school team. He plays football five times a week.

答案：

一、2 3 4 5 1

二、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B

三、

	do one's homework	clean one's room	watch TV	see a film	visit family
Jack	√		√		
Tom	√	√			√
Amy	√			√	
Rose		√	√		√

四、

Names	Likes	How often?
Steven	1. basketball	2. twice a week
John	3. ping-pong	4. once a day
Jenny	5. swim	
Tom	football	five times a week

五、1. sports 2. policeman 3. strong 4. lake 5. hear

六、1. B **点拨：**此句为否定句，应使用 any。this 不能与复数名词连用。
2. C **点拨：**these 应与复数名词连用，只有 shirts 符合条件。
3. B **点拨：**watch 后跟动词原形，A、C 均可排除。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4. A **点拨**:由 had 可知此句为过去时态,所以应选择 last 来匹配过去的时间。
5. A **点拨**:主语为 Tom,是第三人称单数,动词 wash,bursh 应加-es,再考虑到动词与宾语的搭配,只有 A 选项符合条件。
6. C **点拨**:此处的动词短语为主语,动词应改为动名词形式。
7. B **点拨**:leaf 的复数形式为 leaves。
8. A **点拨**:like 后可接 to do,也可以接 doing。在海滩上玩应为 play on the beach。
9. B **点拨**:go shopping 为固定搭配,will not 后应使用动词原形。
10. A **点拨**:本句的意思是"Tony 想要使用篮球来玩传接球游戏",第二空应用介词 with,第一空既可以使用 wants,也可以使用 wanted,所以答案为 A。

七、1. B 2. D 3. E 4. C 5. A
八、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
九、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B
十、

A Wonderful Time

I will leave school this summer. I remember lots of wonderful moments. Last week, we had a good-bye party in our classroom. We decorate our classroom. We sang songs. We said good-bye and thanks to our teachers. We made dumplings. We were sad, but we had a great time.

课时部分

Unit 1 Sports

Lesson 1

一、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. B
方法点拨:此题用**分类记忆法**解答。通过细读句子,根据画线单词在句中的类别或词性将单词进行分类。例如:第 1 小题中画线单词是 basketball,是具体的球类,A、C 选项都是具体的球类,而 B 选项是运动的总称,故选 B。第 5 小题中画线单词是 water,是液体,A、C 选项都是液体,B 选项是固体,故选 B。
二、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. A
三、1. some; any 2. some 3. any; some 4. some
5. any; some **点拨**:some 用于肯定句中,any 用于否定句或疑问句中。但要注意在"Would you like...?"这样的问句中使用 some。
四、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A
五、1. E 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. C
六、1. My favourite fruit is pears. **点拨**:原句意思为在所有水果中,我最喜欢梨,所以用"favourite"来表达。
2. Are there any books under the bed? **点拨**:含有 be 动词的陈述句变为一般疑问句,只需要将 be 动词提至句首。
3. What sports do you play? **点拨**:针对两种运动提问用 what sports。
4. He always wears shorts to play basketball.
5. I want to learn to swim.
七、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. B

Lesson 2

一、1. far 2. near 3. far 4. near 5. far
二、1. this **点拨**:book 为单数,与 this 搭配使用。
2. any **点拨**:疑问句中用 any。
3. or **点拨**:or 用来连接两个选择项,表示"还是"。
4. are **点拨**:主语是 these shoes 为复数,与 are 搭配使用。
5. to buy **点拨**:need to do..."需要做……"。
三、1. C 2. B
3. B **方法点拨**:本题用**替代一致法**解答。上文 crayons 为复数,所以答语中要用代词复数形式搭配。
4. A
5. A **方法点拨**:本题用**主谓一致法**解答。谓语 are 是复数形式,主语也要用复数。
四、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B
五、1. —Do you like this sweater or that sweater?
—I like this sweater.
2. —Do you like these shoes or those shoes?
—I like these shoes.
3. —Do you like this basketball or that basketball?
—I like that basketball.
4. —Do you like these gloves or those gloves?
—I like those gloves.
六、1. B 2. E 3. A 4. D 5. C
七、1. Do you like the yellow one or the white one?
2. I like milk.
3. Do you have any T-shirts?
4. This man is wearing a blue shirt.
5. Those balls are three dollars.
八、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A

Lesson 3

一、1. difficult 2. heavy 3. teach 4. catch 5. those
二、1. B
2. C **点拨**:be ready to do sth., be ready for sth.。
3. B **方法点拨**:本题可用**形近词辨析法**解答。too 有两个词义:一是"也";二是"太,非常"。to 意为"朝,向"。
4. C 5. A
三、1. plays **点拨**:根据 every day 可知此句用一般现在时,主语 my father 为第三人称单数,所以动词用第三人称单数形式。
2. hitting **点拨**:空格前的 is 与动词的现在分词构成现在进行时。
3. hands; hand
4. learn **点拨**:doesn't 之后出现的动词应为原形。
5. to learn; to ride **点拨**:be ready to do sth. 表示准备好做某事;而 learn to do sth. 指学习做某事。
四、1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A
五、2 8 1 4 6 7 5 3
六、1. Mr. Li is ready for his lesson.
2. He wants to watch TV after dinner.
3. My schoolbag is too heavy.
4. He is throwing a ball to his friend.
5. Is there a book in his hand?
七、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F
八、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. B

Lesson 4

一、1. C 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C
二、1. B
2. A **点拨**:teach sb. to do sth. 教某人做某事。
3. A
4. B **方法点拨**:本题用**时态一致法**解答。根据 thought 可知本题用一般过去时,所以选择 was。
5. A
三、1. ate 2. was 3. sees; saw 4. have 5. player
四、1. She went shopping.
2. He watched TV.
3. He read the newspaper.
4. He flew a kite.
5. He played football.
五、1. went; yesterday
2. Did; play
3. didn't teach
4. she didn't
5. He ate bread for breakfast.
六、1. with 2. went swimming 3. taught 4. shop 5. bought
七、(一)1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T
(二)1. Yes, she is.
2. There are five players.
3. Yao Ming.

Lesson 5

一、1. easy; teach
2. arm; card
3. basketball; class
4. difficult; this
5. game; make
二、1. answer 2. game 3. policeman 4. ask 5. very
三、1. A **点拨**:watch + 某人 + 动词原形。
2. A **点拨**:hard 可作副词,意为"努力地",hardly 意为"几乎不"。
3. B **点拨**:动词短语在这句话里做表语,因此要变为动名词形式,play 需要加-ing。play + 球类,不需加 the。
4. B **点拨**:星期前用介词 on。
5. B **点拨**:根据答语可知,问句问的是哪一个球队,所以用 which,指哪一个。
四、1. A 2. D 3. C 4. E 5. B
五、1. E 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. D
六、1. Jenny's 2. does 3. plays basketball 4. watched 5. played with 6. hard 7. yelled for 8. won
七、1. B 2. B 3. B 4. A
八、

My Favourite Sport

My favourite sport is basketball. I don't play basketball every day. I often play basketball with my friends on Saturdays and Sundays. We like to wear T-shirts and shorts to play basketball. We all like Yao Ming. We think he is a good basketball player.

口语能力 PK 台

1. play basketball 2. play football
3. play table tennis

Lesson 6

课内阅读对点练

一、(一)1. C 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. A
(二)1. He liked to play football very much.
2. Because they were very poor.
3. A coach.
4. He gave Pele a football and asked him to be a player on his football team.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

拓展阅读提升练

二、(1)1. B

(2)2. T 3. T 4. T 5. T 6. F

三、1. C 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. C

四、1. (与姓相对的)名字 2. Cook

3. First, some family names come from the places (地点) of people's homes.
Second, family names come from people's jobs.
Third, many people get their family names from their fathers' given names.

4. It comes from his father's given name.

Again, Please!

听力专练

听力材料:

一、1. Steven bought a pair of shorts.

2. The boy likes to play football very much.

3. This is Bob's T-shirt.

4. Let's fly a kite in the park.

5. Do you have any red shoes?

二、1. —What time will the football game begin?
—At half past two in the afternoon.

2. —What clothes do you wear to play, Li Ming?
—I wear shorts to play.

3. —Tom, where did you and your friends play basketball?
—On the playground.

4. —Danny, is it easy to fly a kite?
—No, it's difficult.

5. —Look! Whose kite can fly high?
—Jack's kite can fly high.

三、 Hello, my name is Steven. I like to play ping-pong. I'm Jack. Of all sports, I like swimming best. I'm Joe. What's my favourite sport? Basketball. And I often play basketball with my friend, Jill. But his favourite sport is badminton.

四、 All members of my family are football fans (迷). We often watch football games on Saturdays and Sundays. Last Sunday, we went to a stadium to watch a game. We had fun there. I want to be a football player in the future. So I learn to play football very hard.

答案:

一、4 2 5 3 1

二、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. A

三、Steven—ping-pong Jack—swimming
Joe—basketball Jill—badminton

四、1. football 2. games 3. had 4. player 5. very

读写专练

五、1. hand 2. basketball 3. football 4. policeman 5. answer

六、1. sports 2. play 3. learn to 4. went 5. a 6. some 7. taught

七、1. I have some footballs.
Do you have any footballs?
2. I have some milk. Do you have any milk?

八、(一)1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T

(二)Country: China
Time: September or October
Special food: mooncakes
Things people do: People go back home and eat a big meal together. Some families like to have their dinner in the open air. At night, they watch the moon together and share the story of Chang'e with the children.

九、Last Sunday, Tim bought some books at the bookshop. Jony made lunch for his parents. Bob played card games with his friends. Helen saw some animals in the zoo. Grace taught her brother English.

Unit 2 Good Health to You!

Lesson 7

一、1. healthy 2. strong 3. everyone 4. once 5. last

A. last B. Everyone C. strong

D. once E. healthy

二、1. A **方法点拨:**本题用**常识法**解答。早上七点吃的是早饭。

2. B 3. C 4. C

5. C **方法点拨:**本题用**短语搭配法**解答。be good for…,固定短语,意为"对……有益处"。

三、1. is; be 2. likes 3. once 4. times 5. Did

四、1. C 2. A 3. E 4. D 5. B

方法点拨:此题用**图文匹配法**解答。即先读句子,然后根据句子中的关键信息寻找与之相匹配的图片。例如第1小题"The man is strong."中关键词是 strong,所给图片中只有 C 选项符合,故选 C。第2小题"Vegetables are good for you."中关键词是 vegetables,所给图片中 A 选项符合,故选 A。

五、1. How much 2. How often 3. How many 4. How 5. How old 6. How long 7. How far

六、1. We are healthy/strong and strong/healthy

2. How can they be healthy

3. When does your cousin have breakfast

4. Fish is good for you

5. Tom had breakfast seven times last week

七、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

八、1. five; often 2. sometimes

3. Monday; Tuesday; Wednesday; Thursday; always

4. never

Lesson 8

一、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C

方法点拨:此题用**分类记忆法**解答。根据单词的不同类别或词性将单词进行分类。例如第2小题中 A 选项是动词,B、C 选项是形容词;3小题中 A、B 选项是名词,C 选项是副词或形容词。

二、1. After 2. bad 3. always 4. healthy 5. strong

三、1. gets up 2. has breakfast 3. brushes his teeth 4. washes her face 5. has an English class

四、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B

5. C **点拨:**当主语为第三人称单数的时候,动词要加-s 或-es,变成动词的第三人称单数形式。

五、E G C D H F B A

正确的顺序为:D E B G C H F A

六、1. with 2. at 3. up 4. about 5. to 6. from 7. on

七、1. After English class, I have science class.
Before science class, I have English class.

2. After science class, I have P. E. class.
Before P. E. class, I have science class.

八、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F

九、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T

Lesson 9

一、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. A

二、1. drink 2. going 3. vegetables; fruit 4. does 5. her

三、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. C

5. C **方法点拨:**本题用**语法记忆法**解答。即以-o 结尾的名词变复数加-es 的有 hero, Negro, tomato 和 potato,即英雄和黑人爱吃西红柿和土豆,记住这个顺口溜即可。

四、1. C 2. E 3. D 4. A 5. B

五、Bob: ☺ Linlin: ☺ Tom: ☹

六、1. How often does Amy eat fruit?

2. Danny doesn't like vegetables very much.

3. How often do you run a week?

4. What do you like to drink?

5. What is your favourite food?

七、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. A

Lesson 10

一、1. Running 2. hours 3. minutes 4. Exercise 5. often

二、1. C

2. B **点拨:**在 hour 这个单词中 h 不发音,所以这是一个以元音音素开头的单词,所以用 an。

3. A 4. A

三、1. Eating 2. make 3. twice 4. months 5. visit

四、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B

五、1. He is playing football. Playing football is exercise.

2. She is riding a bike. Riding a bike is exercise.

3. They are playing ping-pong. Playing ping-pong is exercise.

六、1. B 2. E 3. A 4. C 5. D

七、 First, eat more vegetables and fruit. Vegetables and fruit are good for your health. Second, brush your teeth twice a day. Third, do exercise every day. Fourth, always have breakfast.

八、1. B **方法点拨:**此题用**推理判断法**解答。即通过细读短文,再针对问题返回短文中找出相关的句子,推断出答案。由"We eat breakfast every day…"可推测出 Tom 一周吃七次早餐。

2. B 3. B 4. B 5. C

Lesson 11

一、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C

二、1. with 2. after 3. on 4. at 5. for

三、1. else 2. help 3. their 4. makes 5. on

四、1. A 2. C 3. A

4. C **点拨:**…it is + 形容词 + to do…。

5. C

五、1. B 2. D 3. E 4. A 5. C

六、1. on time 2. do my homework

3. wash the dishes 4. clean the floor

5. water the flowers 6. do exercise

7. play ping-pong 8. have fun

七、1. I always make my lunch

2. Do you help your friends at school

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3. He can jump very high
4. It is important to do exercise
5. Does Danny work hard at sports

八、1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B

九、 Everyone wants to be healthy and strong. How can we be healthy? First, I always have breakfast. Breakfast is good for our bodies. I like to eat vegetables and fruit. I don't eat junk food. Second, I get up and go to bed early every day. Third, I do exercise every morning. I run with my mother in the park for about 20 minutes. At last, I brush my teeth twice a day.

口语能力 PK 台

一、1. do exercise 2. have breakfast
3. wash her hands 4. go to school
5. ride a bike.

二、1. Yes, I do 2. I brush my teeth twice a day.
3. I eat fruit.
4. I exercise about 30 minutes a day.
5. Yes, I do.

Lesson 12

课内阅读对点练

一、(一)4 3 1 5 6 2
(二)1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B
(三)1. She was born in the U. S. in 1880.
2. No, they didn't.
3. Her teacher, Anne Sullivan.
4. She taught Helen to learn.
5. We should never give up.

拓展阅读提升练

二、1. Holiday 2. Visiting her aunt 3. Tom
4. Going for a bike ride 5. In the park

三、a. 1 4 2 3
b. 1. C 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. C

Again, Please!

听力专练

听力材料:

一、1. Kim's favourite fruit is watermelons. She eats them five times a week.
2. Jane's favourite fruit is apples. She eats them six times a week.
3. Dick's favourite food is fish. He eats it four times a week.
4. Linda likes to eat vegetables best. She eats them seven times a week.

二、1. How can we be healthy and strong?
2. When did you have breakfast last week?
3. How many minutes are there in an hour?
4. How often do you go to the cinema?
5. Does Jenny work hard at school?

三、 Every day my mother gets up at 6:00 in the morning. First, she washes her hands and face, and then she brushes her teeth. Next, she does exercise for 20 minutes. Then she makes breakfast. She goes to work by bike at 7:40.

四、 Exercise helps make our bodies healthy and strong. I run for thirty minutes every morning. Basketball is my favourite sport. I play it three times a week. That's an hour and a half a week. I play football twice a week.

答案:

一、Kim—watermelons—five times a week
Jane—apples—six times a week
Dick—fish—four times a week
Linda—vegetables—seven times a week

二、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. C

三、6 5 2 3 4 1

四、1. Exercise 2. strong 3. minutes 4. times
5. hour

读写专练

五、1. never 2. always 3. twice 4. often
5. once

六、(一)1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A
(二)1. There are five tips.
2. Because walking is good exercise and exercise is good for our health.
3. Breakfast. 4. Yes, it is.

七、1. Water World 2. lose weight 3. Sunday
4. 25 5. 9:00 a. m.

八、 My Day

I go to school five times a week, from Monday to Friday. Every day I get up at 6:30 in the morning. First, I wash my face and brush my teeth. Then I have my breakfast. After that I go to school by bike. I work hard at school. I have four classes in the morning and two classes in the afternoon. After school, I play football with my friends. Before dinner, I do my homework. After dinner, I watch TV. Sometimes I read a book. Then I go to bed. This is my day.

Unit 3 What Will You Do This Summer?

Lesson 13

一、1. sunny 2. rainy 3. Wind 4. snow
5. cloudy

点拨:此题型考查名词转换成相应形容词,同时要结合文本内容来选择正确的词语。我们首先要了解名词和形容词的概念。名词是词性的一种,是表示人、事物或抽象概念等名称的词。形容词也是词性的一种,是表示人或事物的性质或特征的词。例如 sun 和 sunny,一个是名词"太阳",一个是形容词"晴朗的",表示天气状况。rain 和 rainy,一个是名词"雨",一个是形容词"下雨的"。

二、1. A
2. C **点拨**:happen to. . . 为固定搭配。
3. B **点拨**:此句为否定句,且空格后为名词复数,故选 B。
4. C **点拨**:三个单词都有"看"的意思。watch 一般指观察动态的事物,常用于看电视、观察动物等词组;look 表示"看"时,要与介词 at 连用。see 指"看见",所以此题最恰当的答案应为 see。
5. B

三、1. with 2. in 3. to 4. on 5. at

四、1. C 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. A

五、1. B 2. D 3. E 4. C 5. A

六、(一)1. F 2. T 3. T
4. T **点拨**:此题需要通过推断来获知答案。如果雪人是被人弄走的话,帽子也会随之消失。这里留下了帽子,又是中午最热的时候,所以可以推断出雪人有可能是融化了。
5. F

(二) My favourite season is summer. Because summer is hot and sunny. I can eat ice cream. And I can swim in the swimming pool with my friends. (答案不唯一)

Lesson 14

一、1. fly a kite 2. pick the flowers
3. play basketball 4. listen to music
5. read a book

二、1. happy 2. good—bad 3. hot—cold
4. warm—cool 5. sick—healthy

三、1. be angry **点拨**:will 后应接动词原形,angry 为形容词,不能直接跟在 will 后面。
2. home **点拨**:home 可直接跟在动词之后,不需要使用介词。
3. close **点拨**:下雨了,"关上"窗户才符合常理。
4. will **点拨**:will 与动词原形连用,am 与现在分词连用。
5. will be **点拨**:soon 指"不久以后",所以此句应使用一般将来时。

四、1. C 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. B

五、1. they are going to
2. I will not have breakfast next Monday.
3. will she 4. will; do
5. I don't want to get wet.

六、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. C

七、1. seasons 2. winter 3. spring
4. summer **方法点拨**:第 1－4 小题,用**关键信息搜寻法**解答。即仔细阅读文本,找到相关句子,理解句子含义,找出正确的词语。
5. dies **方法点拨**:此题用**综合信息推断法**解答。文中说在冬季,植物死去,而题干中是"在冬季,向日葵_____。"我们需要结合上下文推断出,在冬季,向日葵死去。所以答案为 dies。
6. For many plants, the … autumn and winter.

八、 Next Sunday is Mother's Day. I will buy a gift for my mother. I will go to the shopping mall in the morning. I want to buy a hat and some flowers for her. At noon, I'll make lunch for my mother. I think she'll be happy. In the evening, I'll sing a song for her. It will be a great Sunday.

Lesson 15

一、1. lake 2. swim 3. ship 4. beach
5. swam

二、1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C

三、1. B **点拨**:这里用 for,指以什么方式来度过暑假。
2. A **点拨**:every year 每年,一般现在时的标志词。
3. B
4. C **点拨**:done 的意思是"结束了,完成了"。
5. B **点拨**:last summer 去年夏天,为过去的时间,所以选择过去式。

四、1. will go 2. went 3. visit 4. swam
5. will visit 6. swim 7. will eat

五、1. D 2. A 3. F 4. E 5. G

六、1. What will Jenny do this summer?
2. How did you go to the beach?
3. He will watch the ships and boats on the sea.
4. We are swimming in the sea.
5. I will be in Canada for the summer holiday.

七、1. C 2. B 3. C 4. beef 5. farmer
方法点拨:此题用**关键信息匹配法**解答。即通读

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

全文及各小题题目，理清文本脉络，带着问题在短文中搜寻相关信息，然后与答案匹配。

Lesson 16

一、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B

二、1. Where 2. Who 3. On May the eighteenth 4. Tian'anmen Square 5. ping-pong

三、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B

四、3 5 1 6 2 4

正确排列顺序：3 4 1 5 6 2

方法点拨：此题用关键词匹配法和时间脉络法解答。第一步：搜寻关键词与图片相匹配，例如做作业，音乐课，乘火车等。第二步：通过给出的时间信息，理清文本脉络。文本内容表述的是景假将要做的事情：七月一号（写作业一周半）—张家口（六天）—七月中旬（湖南乡村）—两周后（八月）—音乐课（两周）—游泳（直到九月开学）—繁忙的暑假。

五、1. Will you buy any seafood? **点拨**：含有 will 的句子改为一般疑问句，需要把 will 放到句子的最前面，主语 I 变为 you，句尾加问号，some 应变为 any。

2. He isn't going to listen to music at 9:10 p.m.. **点拨**：含有 be 动词的陈述句改为否定句，只需要在 be 动词后加 not 即可。

3. Miss Chang will be a doctor next year. **点拨**：next year 为明年，是将来的时间，所以句子使用将来时态是正确的，但 will 后出现的动词应为原形，所以应将 is 改为 be。

4. What will; do **点拨**：对 call you 这个动词短语提问，说明不知道要做什么，要用 what 来提问。

5. Will you fly home on June 1st?

六、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. B

6. 最后，我计划和我的父母去北京旅游。

Lesson 17

一、1. camp 2. clever 3. fly 4. child 5. bread

二、C H B G E D F A

三、1. fished; will fish **点拨**：last summer holiday 为过去的时间，选择过去时；this summer 为将来的时间，选择将来时。

2. going to **点拨**：be + going to 表示将来。

3. to swim **点拨**：学习做某事 learn to + 动词原形。

4. lives; lived **点拨**：前一句指现在住在哪里，后一句由 three years ago（三年前）可知应使用过去时。

5. be fun **点拨**：will 后接动词原形。

四、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C

五、1. B 2. D 3. C 4. E 5. A

六、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. B

5. 他想请半天假。

6. I think John is naughty.
/It is wrong of him to cheat his teacher.

七、

My Summer Camp

Hi, I'm Steven! Summer holiday is coming! I'll go to an English summer camp this summer holiday. It's really a good chance to improve my English. I will stay with my foreign teachers and my classmates for about three weeks. In the morning, we'll have English classes. In the afternoon, we'll see an English movie, and we will learn some English songs. In the evening, it will be our free time. We will have a lot of fun. I think I will have a great summer holiday!

口语能力 PK 台

二、**B**：I will go to Sanya. **B**：On August 1st.

B：My father and my mother. **B**：By plane.

Lesson 18

课内阅读对点练

一、(一)1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. A

(二)1. low 2. ugly 3. weak
4. short 5. takes 6. forgets

(三)路线图：略

(四)1. The three kites are flying high in the blue sky.
2. C
3. He can't swim well, and he needs some help.
4. He is a kind-hearted man.

(五)Kylie: beautiful; has many colours and a long red tail
Karla: strong; can fly very high
Krista: not beautiful; not fast; not strong

拓展阅读提升练

二、A: 1. C 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B

6. Because he wants to eat the meat in the crow's mouth.

B: The fox is very happy. He thinks he is so clever. And the crow is sad. She loses her meat and the fox cheats her. From then on, no one likes the fox, and no one believes him. He is lonely at last. (答案不唯一)

三、**A**: 1. hungry 2. lunch/food
3. frightened 4. tummy 5. beatings

B: 1. The Farmer and the Wolf
2. I would give the wolf beatings, too. (答案不唯一)

Again, Please!

听力专练

听力材料：

一、1. I like fans in summer.
2. I go to Hong Kong by ship.
3. In autumn, the leaves turn yellow, red and orange.
4. It's sunny today. 5. I'll swim in the sea.

二、1. Sometimes I like to watch the ships and the boats.
2. They live in a big city.
3. In autumn, the trees lose their leaves.
4. I will say hi to your mother.
5. I want to learn to fly.

三、1. What is he doing?
2. What colour are the leaves in autumn?
3. What do you like to do in summer?
4. Which season is in January in Baoding?
5. What will they do next week?

四、1. Summer is hot. I like fans.
2. I will swim in a lake this summer.
3. Linda, don't be angry.
4. We will watch an old ship.
5. My son is very clever.

答案：

一、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C

二、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

三、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. B

四、1. fans 2. lake 3. angry 4. ship 5. clever

读写专练

五、1. D 2. C 3. B 4. E 5. A

六、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B

七、1. far 2. looking 3. C 4. A 5. A

八、

My Winter Holiday

I like winter. There is a holiday in winter. This winter holiday, I will go to Harbin with my mother and father. I like playing in the snow. I'll make a snowman with my friends. The Spring Festival is in the holiday, too. It's very interesting! We'll have a big meal at the Spring Festival. It'll be great! Do you like it?

Unit 4 Li Ming Comes Home

Lesson 19

一、1. fly home; went home by plane/air
2. rides a bike; by bike
3. walks to school; on foot
4. by taxi; take a taxi
例如：by car; take a car by train; take a train
方法点拨：此题用对比记忆法解答。结合上下文内容选择正确的词组，同时要判断好文本时态，以便使用动词的正确时态。例如 walk to school 和 on foot，一个是动词词组“步行去学校”，一个是介词词组“步行”。take a taxi 和 by taxi，都是“乘坐出租车”，一个是动词词组，一个是介词词组。

二、1. B **点拨**：flags 为复数，相应的 be 动词也应为复数。
2. C **点拨**：a gift for everyone 为每个人准备的礼物。
3. B **点拨**：from Australia 来自澳大利亚。
4. B **点拨**：由答句可知，问句是在询问意见，所以应选择 What about。
5. B **点拨**：how many 后应接名词的复数形式。

三、1. How much 2. How many 3. How far
4. How often 5. How long 6. How much

四、1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B

五、1. B 2. F 3. D 4. E 5. A 6. C

六、1. Yes, he will. 2. Who; you give; to
3. How many gifts does he need for his family?
4. I need a gift for everyone in my family.

七、1. She needs two dresses.
2. They are sixty dollars.
3. She wants to buy eleven gifts.
4. They are three English books, two caps, two dresses and four toy cars.
5. They are one hundred and fourteen dollars.

Lesson 20

一、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C

二、1. got-getting-will get
2. found-finding-will find
3. hit-hitting-will hit
4. taught-teaching-will teach
5. began-beginning-will begin
6. said-saying-will say

三、1. found **点拨**：由后一句中的 were 可知此处应为过去时态。
2. at **点拨**：at school 在学校，为固定搭配。
3. on **点拨**：在操场上应使用介词 on。
4. of **点拨**：a photo of … 为名词所有格，指“……的照片”。
5. with **点拨**：在动词后使用 with + 名词，指

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

"和……一起做某事"。

四、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B

五、B A C D

1. She went shopping with her parents last Sunday.
2. They played ping-pong yesterday.
3. They saw the animals last week.
4. He flew a kite in the park last Saturday.

六、1. went 2. read 3. to play/playing
4. played 5. called 6. ate

七、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. C

八、

Last Weekend

I had a busy weekend last week. On Saturday morning, I went to the bookstore. I bought some books. Then I went home and read those books. In the afternoon, I played football with my friends. On Sunday morning, I did my homework and played computer games. In the afternoon, I cleaned my room. What a busy weekend!

Lesson 21

一、1. tell 2. begin 3. late 4. party 5. early

二、1. early 2. before 3. easy 4. low
5. light

三、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B

四、1. have 2. will begins 3. him
4. to surprise 5. call

五、1. How many people are coming to the party?
点拨:就数字 nine 提问,指不知道具体数量,所以用 how many 来提问。
2. Will you be early?
点拨:含有 will 的陈述句变一般疑问句,需将 will 放在句子最前面。
3. Please come to the party for Tom.
4. We want to surprise Li Ming!
5. Who is the surprise party for?

六、1. D 2. E 3. C 4. A 5. B

七、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T
6. I think the girl student is naughty and clever.

Lesson 22

一、1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. E

二、1. with 2. bring 3. making
4. when 5. bought

三、1. C **点拨**:know about 为固定短语,表示"了解;知道"。
2. C **点拨**:begin + at + 时间,指"在……时间开始",无需再加其他介词。
3. C **点拨**:含有实义动词 know 的句子变否定句,需加适当的助动词 + not,she 为第三人称单数,所以应选择"doesn't"。
4. A **点拨**:every cookie 为第三人称单数,动词要用第三人称单数形式。
5. B **点拨**:begin with … 以……开始。

四、1 3 4 2 5 6
正确排列顺序:1 5 4 3 2 6

五、1. Does Danny open the door?
2. Jenny doesn't know about the party.
3. That is when the party begins.
4. Here she comes.
5. What time will he get home?

六、2 1 5 4 3

七、(一)1. B 2. B 3. B
(二)4. T 5. F
6. 有一所房子,房子里有一些大米。

Lesson 23

一、1. table 2. surprise 3. let
4. heavy 5. breakfast

二、C E F B D A

三、1. has 2. to 3. to remember
4. leaving 5. for

四、1. B **点拨**:the train for Zhejiang 指"开往浙江的火车"。
2. B **点拨**:Chinese 意思是"中国的",首字母需大写。
3. B **点拨**:forget to do sth. ,指"忘记去做某事"。
4. A
5. A **点拨**:It's time for sb. to do sth. 对某人来说该做某事了。

五、1. have a birthday party
2. all
3. getting ready for
4. Everything
5. arrives

六、1. B 2. B 3. B 4. C
5. 你要用钱做什么?
6. Peter is naughty and clever.

七、

A(Surprise) Party for My Mother

Tomorrow is my mother's birthday. My father and I want to have a party for her. We'll not tell her about the party. In the morning, my father will buy a birthday cake. I will do some shopping. I am going to buy a gift and some fruit for my mother. The party will begin at 12:00. We'll go home at 11:30. When my mother comes home, we'll say "Surprise!" to her. What a big surprise!

Lesson 24

课内阅读对点练

一、(一)1. C 2. B 3. A 4. AB 5. C
6. C
(二)1. quickly/fast 2. light 3. remembered
4. wet 5. outside
(三)画图略。 **方法点拨**:此题用**关键信息梳理法**解答。即按照故事的发生顺序梳理关键信息,得出答案,同时要仔细观察文本内容从而匹配正确的图片。顺序:Danny 做了一个蛋糕——发现蛋糕没有放糖——每个蛋糕里有一美元——伍德老师给李明寄蛋糕——李明收到蛋糕。
E B D A C
(四)1. In the afternoon.
2. Jenny brings some cookies.
3. On the box. 4. A week later.
5. Danny needs some eggs, some milk, some flour, some sugar, a bowl and a spoon.

拓展阅读提升练

二、A:1. A 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B
6. The king was not good at writing.
The writer was brave and honest.
He wasn't afraid of the king and told the truth.
And he wasn't afraid to be sent to prison.
B:After some time, the king quitted writing. He set the writer free. And the writer began to write good stories.

三、A:1. things 2. hurts 3. fifty/50 4. doesn't
B:1. B
2. Because she has a poor memory and she forgets her age. Besides, she doesn't know how to calculate(计算).

Again, Please!

听力专练

听力材料:

一、1. forget 2. late 3. before 4. answer
5. come

二、1. All the cookies have letters on them.
2. This cap is cool. I'll take four.
3. My sister swam in the sea last summer.
4. We will have a birthday party for him.
5. The party begins at 3:00 in the afternoon.

三、1. How many people are coming to the party?
2. When is the party? 3. What does she need?
4. How much is it?
5. What time does the ping-pong game begin?

四、 Today is Jenny's surprise party. Her parents are at home. They're making a cake and some cookies. Every cookie has a letter. Her parents don't tell her about the party. The party begins at 4:30 in the afternoon. Kim comes to Jenny's home at 4:00. She is early.

Jenny is shopping for gifts. At 4:20, she arrives home. How surprised she is! All of people have a good time.

答案:

一、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A

二、**方法点拨**:此题用**三步两遍听看法**解答。第一步:看题、看图,弄懂题目要求并猜测听力内容。第二步:第一遍听音,边听边做题,注意捕捉录音中的关键信息,并根据关键信息对图片进行排序。第三步:第二遍听音,边做边检查,得出最后答案。
2 4 3 1 5

三、5 3 2 4 1

四、1. cake 2. Every 3. tell 4. begins
5. early 6. All

读写专练

五、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. A

六、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A
6. A 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. B

七、1. star 2. gases 3. bigger
4. hot 5. centre 6. eight

八、 Tomorrow we will have the last party before leaving school. The party will begin at 9:00 in the morning. We'll take pictures. We'll eat delicious food. We'll make dumplings together. Mr. Chang will sing a song for us. He is strict, but he is kind to us. We all like him. We will be very happy.

Unit 1 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. hand 2. policewoman 3. difficult
4. wearing 5. question; answer

句型语法过关

二、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. A
6. C 7. B 8. B 9. C 10. C

三、1. runs; ran; running 2. teaching; taught
3. think; thought

四、1. any; any 2. any; some; any
3. some; some 4. some
5. some; any; some

五、1. I wear shorts to play basketball
2. How much are those balls
3. He can't hit the ball to me

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4. I saw some animals in the zoo
5. They played a game with the Orange Team

综合运用过关

六、1. D 2. B 3. E 4. A 5. C
七、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T

Unit 2 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. C 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B
二、1. bad 2. minutes 3. After
4. healthy 5. next
三、1. How many 2. How old 3. How often
4. How far 5. How much

句型语法过关

四、1. twice 2. health 3. does
4. had 5. home
五、1. A 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. B
6. B 7. B 8. A 9. C 10. B
六、1. taught 2. thinks 3. Running
4. does 5. teeth
七、1. E 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. A
八、1. Riding a bike is exercise.
2. She waters the flowers.
3. Three times a week.
4. Fish is my favourite food.
5. No, he doesn't.

综合运用过关

九、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F

Unit 3 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. snow 2. sport 3. will
4. holiday 5. friend
二、1. clever 2. visit 3. swim 4. fan
5. ships

句型语法过关

三、1. went; will go; am going **点拨**:yesterday 与过去时搭配使用,tomorrow 与将来时搭配使用,now 与现在进行时搭配使用。
2. swimming; swim; swam; will swim
3. visited; am visiting; will visit

四、1. A **点拨**:此题需要通过语境进行推断。前一句说"外面很冷。",按常识来看,我们需要把门关好,所以选择 A。
2. C **点拨**:此题需要通过语境推断并结合排除法,我没写完作业,妈妈肯定不会开心,而妈妈也不会因此感到累,所以选择 C。
3. B **点拨**:根据句意"我们不会在公园里摘花。那是错误的。"因此选 B。
4. B **点拨**:通过后一句"That is hot, but it's good for my body."可以排除 A 和 C 项。
5. C **点拨**:通过句子中的关键信息:white 白色的;in the sky 在天上;look like animals 看起来像动物,可以推断出是 clouds 云。

五、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. A

综合运用过关

六、(一)1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T
(二)1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A

Unit 4 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、

buy	buys	bought	will buy
go	goes	went	will go
bring	brings	brought	will bring
teach	teaches	taught	will teach
give	gives	gave	will give

二、1. buy 2. gave 3. will go
4. taught 5. brings
三、1. find 2. party 3. early 4. tell 5. cake

句型语法过关

四、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T
五、1. C **点拨**:will 后使用动词原形,且 home 可直接用于动词之后,不需要介词。
2. A **点拨**:由句意可知,这是个惊喜派对,所以不要告诉当事人。
3. B **点拨**:every 强调个体,后接单数名词,相应的动词应使用第三人称单数形式。
4. B **点拨**:every 指"每一个",后接单数名词,不可放在人称代词 we 后;else 一般与 what 等词连用,表示"其他的";all 全部;所有的,此处表示我们所有人都想去公园。所以只能选择 B。
5. C **点拨**:由句意可知我们是要去加拿大。leave for 是"动身去……"的意思,符合句意。

六、1. B C 2. A C 3. A B C
4. B C 5. B C

综合运用过关

七、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C
6. A 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. B
点拨:此题首先要注意时间,第一句末尾的 last Sunday 表明第一段的时态都应为一般过去时。而第二段开头的 next Sunday 则提醒我们,这一段应为一般将来时。

八、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

典点

活页检测卷

后附全书参考答案及点拨

六年级 英语 下

JJ版

Unit 1 Sports

Lesson 1 Ping-pong and Basketball

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. sport 运动
2. football 足球
3. any 任一;一些
4. some 一些
5. ping-pong 乒乓球运动;乒乓
6. wear 穿
7. play football 踢足球
8. go shopping 去购物

二、我要掌握的句型

1. What sports do you play? 你做什么体育运动?
2. Of all sports, I like basketball best! 在所有的运动项目中,我最喜欢篮球!
3. Ping-pong is my favourite sport. 乒乓球是我最喜欢的运动项目。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Favourite sports

原 文	译 文
I play basketball and football. Of all sports, I like basketball best! What sports do you play, Li Ming?	我打篮球、踢足球。在所有的运动项目中,我最喜欢篮球!你做什么体育运动,李明?
I play football and ping-pong. Ping-pong is my favourite sport.	我踢足球,打乒乓球。乒乓球是我最喜欢的运动项目。
basketball football ping-pong	篮球 足球 乒乓

Do you have any ping-pong balls?

原 文	译 文
1. Can you teach me to play ping-pong? Sure!	1. 你能教我打乒乓球吗? 当然!
2. Let's go to play ping-pong and basketball tomorrow. Great! I can learn to play basketball.	2. 让我们明天去打乒乓球和篮球吧。 太好了!我能学打篮球了。
3. Do you have any ping-pong balls? No. We can buy some.	3. 你有乒乓球吗? 没有。我们可以买一些。
4. I also need a T-shirt. I always wear a T-shirt to play ping-pong. Okay. Let's go shopping.	4. 我还需要一件T恤衫。我总是穿着T恤衫打乒乓球。 好的。让我们去购物吧。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考点突破营

1. What sports do you play? 你做什么体育运动?
   解析:这是一个 what 引导的特殊疑问句,用来询问对方做哪些体育运动。
2. Of all sports, I like basketball best! 在所有的运动项目中,我最喜欢篮球!
   解析:这是一个陈述句,用来表示最喜欢什么。
3. Ping-pong is my favourite sport. 乒乓球是我最喜欢的运动项目。
   解析:这是一个陈述句,用来表示某物是自己最喜欢的事物,favourite 用来表示最喜欢的。

易错点提示

some 和 any 的用法。

	相同点	不同点
some	1. 都表示“一些”。 2. 都可接可数名词的复数形式。如:I have some pencils. Do you have any pencils? 3. 都可接不可数名词。如:There is some water. Is there any juice?	用在肯定句中。
any		用在否定句和疑问句中。

Lesson 2 At the Sports Shop

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

or　或者;还是

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Here they are! 它们在这儿!
2. Do you like this T-shirt or that T-shirt? 你喜欢这件 T 恤衫还是那件 T 恤衫?

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Do you want these or those?

原 文	译 文
Let's see, Jenny. I need a T-shirt. And we need some ping-pong balls. 1. Excuse me. Do you have any T-shirts? Yes. I'll show you! 2. Here they are! Thanks.	让我们看一下,詹妮。我需要一件 T 恤衫。 而且我们需要一些乒乓球。 1. 打扰一下。你这儿有 T 恤衫吗? 有的。我带你们看一下! 2. 它们在这儿! 谢谢。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

原 文	译 文
3. Do you like this T-shirt or that T-shirt, Li Ming? 4. I want this one! 5. Now we need some ping-pong balls. Do you want these or those? 6. These balls are five dollars. Those are four dollars. I want those!	3. 你喜欢这件T恤衫还是那件T恤衫，李明？ 4. 我想要这件！ 5. 现在我们需要一些乒乓球。你想要这些还是那些？ 6. 这些球五美元。那些四美元。我想要那些！

考点突破营

1. Here they are! 它们在这儿！
解析：本句的正常语序为“They are here!”，为了强调和引起别人的注意，将here置于句首。
2. Do you like this T-shirt or that T-shirt? 你喜欢这件T恤衫还是那件T恤衫？
解析：这是一个选择疑问句，提供了两种情况，供对方选择回答。要注意的是，这种情况下，我们不能使用Yes或No来回答。

Lesson 3 Let's Play!

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. basketball 篮球
2. try 试；尝试
3. heavy 重的
4. difficult 困难的；费力的
5. easy 容易的
6. hand 手
7. throw 扔；抛；投
8. catch 接住
9. hit 击(球)；打
10. light 轻的

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Are you ready to learn to play ping-pong? 你准备好学打乒乓球了吗？
2. Let me try. 让我试试。
3. I am hitting the ball to Jenny. 我正在把球打给詹妮。

课文朗读

翻译达人秀

Playing basketball

原 文	译 文
Are you ready to learn to play basketball, Li Ming? Yes! Are you ready to learn to play ping-pong? I want to learn, too! 1. Let me try. Here I go! I'm throwing the basketball! 2. Danny! Catch the basketball! Ouch!	你准备好学打篮球了吗，李明？ 是的！你准备好学打乒乓球了吗？ 我也想学！ 1. 让我试试。我来了！我要扔篮球了！ 2. 丹尼！接住篮球！ 哎呦！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

原 文	译 文
3. Ouch! The ball is heavy!	3. 哎呦！这球真重！
4. Throw the basketball, Danny!	4. 把篮球扔给我，丹尼！
5. This is too difficult! The ball is too heavy!	5. 这太难了！这个球太重了！
6. This ball is light! I can throw it. This is easy!	6. 这个球轻！我能扔它。这个容易！
7. The basketball is heavy. The ping-pong ball is light.	7. 篮球重。乒乓球轻。

Playing ping-pong

原 文	译 文
1. I am hitting the ball to Jenny.	1. 我正在把球打给詹妮。
2. Can you hit the ball to Jenny? I think I can!	2. 你能把球打给詹妮吗？我觉得我行！
3. Ouch! I hit my hand!	3. 哎呦！我打到了我的手！
4. Li Ming hits the ball, but Danny hits his hand! Poor Danny!	4. 李明打到了球，但是丹尼打到了他的手！可怜的丹尼！

考点突破营

1. Are you ready to learn to play ping-pong? 你准备好学打乒乓球了吗？

   解析：这是一个一般疑问句，表示询问对方是否为某事做好准备，be ready to do sth. 是“为某事做好准备”的意思，learn to do sth. 表示“学习做某事”。

2. Let me try. 让我试试。

   解析：这是一个祈使句，try 意思是“试”，另外 try 也可以用作名词，意为“尝试”，常用短语“have a try”。

3. I am hitting the ball to Jenny. 我正在把球打给詹妮。

   解析：这是一个现在进行时的句子，hit 的现在分词要双写 t 再加-ing。hit the ball to ... 意思是“把球打向……”。

Lesson 4 Did You Have Fun?

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. bought 买（*buy* 的过去式）
2. taught 教（*teach* 的过去式）
3. thought 想（*think* 的过去式）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、我要掌握的句型

Did you have fun today? 你们今天玩得高兴吗?

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

We're home!

原 文	译 文
Hi, Li Ming! Hi, Jenny! Did you have fun today? Yes, we did!	嗨,李明!嗨,詹妮!你们今天玩得高兴吗?是的,我们玩得高兴!
Jenny: We went to a shop. Li Ming bought a T-shirt today.	**詹妮**:我们去了一家商店。李明今天买了一件T恤衫。
Li Ming: We played ping-pong. I taught Jenny to hit the ball! Danny wanted to hit the ball, too, but he hit his hand.	**李明**:我们打了乒乓球。我教詹妮打到球了!丹尼也想打到球,但是他打到手了。
Jenny: We played basketball, too. I taught Li Ming to throw and catch the ball. He is a good basketball player!	**詹妮**:我们也打篮球了。我教了李明传球和接球。他是个好篮球运动员!

原 文	译 文
Mrs. Smith: Did Danny learn to play basketball, too?	**史密斯先生**:丹尼也学打篮球了吗?
Li Ming: Yes, he did. But he thought the basketball was too heavy. He played basketball with a ping-pong ball!	**李明**:是的,他学了。但是他觉得篮球太重了。他用乒乓球打篮球!

Bought, taught and thought

原 文	译 文
Jenny and Li Ming often buy things at the shop.	詹妮和李明经常在商店里买东西。
Sometimes, they teach each other a sport.	有时,他们互相教对方一项运动。
Danny always thinks he can catch the ball, but he can't.	丹尼总是认为他能接住球,但是他不能。
This morning, Jenny and Li Ming bought things at the shop.	今天上午,詹妮和李明在商店里买了东西。
This afternoon, they taught each other a sport.	今天下午,他们互相教了对方一项运动。
Danny thought he could hit the ball, but he hit his hand.	丹尼认为他能击中球,但是他打到了他的手。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考点突破营

Did you have fun today? 你们今天玩得高兴吗?

解析:这是一个一般疑问句,时态为一般过去时,句型结构"Did + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他?"。用来询问过去是否做了某事,本句中是问对方是否玩得高兴。

Lesson 5 A Basketball Game

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. game 比赛;游戏
2. ask 问
3. very 很;非常
4. won 赢(*win* 的过去式)
5. answer 回答;答案
6. policeman 警察

二、我要掌握的句型

1. What did you do this evening? 今天晚上你们做了什么?
2. We watched Bob play basketball! 我们看鲍勃打篮球了!
3. Who won? 谁赢了?

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Who won?

原 文	译 文
What did you do this evening, Jenny and Li Ming?	詹妮、李明,今天晚上你们做了什么?
We watched Bob play basketball!	我们看鲍勃打篮球了!
"Did Bob's team play a game?" asks Mr. Smith.	"鲍勃所在的队参赛了吗?"史密斯先生问。
"Yes, his team played with the Orange Team," says Jenny. "It was a very good game. Everyone played hard!"	"是的,他所在的球队和橙队打比赛。"詹妮说,"比赛很精彩。每个人打得都很努力!"
"Who won?" asks Mr. Smith.	"谁赢了?"史密斯先生问。
"Bob's team won!" says Li Ming.	"鲍勃所在的球队赢了!"李明说。
"That's great!" says Mr. Smith. "Did you have fun?"	"那太好了!"史密斯先生说,"你们玩得高兴吗?"
"Yes!" answers Li Ming. "We yelled for Bob's team!"	"是的!"李明回答。"我们为鲍勃所在的球队加油了!"
Go! Bob!	加油! 鲍勃!
Go! Blue Team!	加油! 蓝队!
"Does Bob play basketball every day?" asks Li Ming.	"鲍勃每天都打篮球吗?"李明问。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

原 文	译 文
"No. He is a policeman. He plays basketball for fun on Saturday and Sunday," says Jenny. "He played so well this evening. He is a good player," says Li Ming.	"不,他是一个警察。他在周六日打篮球是为了消遣。"詹妮说。 "他今天晚上打得真好。他是一个好运动员。"李明说。

考点突破营

1. What did you do this evening? 今天晚上你们做了什么?

   解析:这是一个 what 引导的特殊疑问句,用来询问过去某个时间做了什么,what 表示"什么",句中"this evening"是刚刚过去的时间,因此助动词要用 did。

2. We watched Bob play basketball! 我们看鲍勃打篮球了!

   解析:这是一个一般过去时的陈述句。watch somebody do something 意思是"看某人做某事"。

3. Who won? 谁赢了?

   解析:这是一个 who 引导的特殊疑问句,用来询问"谁"做了某事或者获得了什么结果。won 是 win 的过去式,是"赢"的意思。

Lesson 6 A Famous Football Player

课文朗读

翻译达人秀

Story time

原 文	译 文
1. Many years ago, there was a boy from a very poor family. He liked to play football very much. But his parents couldn't buy him a football. The boy used boxes and bottles as his footballs. 2. One day, a coach saw him. He thought that the boy would be a good player. The coach gave the boy a football as a gift. From then on, the boy played football harder. 3. At Christmas time, the boy wanted to do something for the kind coach. He ran to the coach's home and dug a hole in front of his house. The coach asked why. The boy said, "I can't buy you a Christmas gift. But I can dig a hole for your Christmas tree."	1. 很多年以前,有一个男孩,他家很穷。他非常喜欢踢足球。但是他的父母不能给他买一个足球。这个男孩用盒子和瓶子当他的足球。 2. 一天,一个教练看到了他。他认为这个男孩会成为一个好运动员。这个教练送给这个男孩一个足球作为礼物。从那时起,这个男孩更努力地踢足球了。 3. 圣诞节的时候,这个男孩想为这个善良的教练做些事情。他跑去教练家并在他的房前挖了一个坑。教练问为什么。男孩说:"我无法为你买一个圣诞礼物。但是我能为你的圣诞树挖一个坑。"

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

原 文	译 文
The coach was happy. He said, "This is the best Christmas gift."	这个教练很高兴。他说："这是最好的圣诞礼物。"
4. The coach asked the boy to be a player on his football team. In 1958, the 17-year-old boy and his team won the World Cup. He was famous around the world.	4. 教练让这个男孩加入了他的足球队，成为了一名运动员。1958 年，这个 17 岁的男孩和他所在的球队赢得了世界杯。他举世闻名。
5. Do you know who the boy is?	5. 你知道这个男孩是谁吗？
He is Pele—the world famous football player!	他就是贝利——世界著名的足球运动员！

我是小作家

描写最喜欢的运动项目或运动员

思维步骤：

1. 先介绍自己喜欢的运动类型，再点题，写明自己最喜欢的运动项目或运动员。
2. 介绍运动项目，从穿什么衣服玩、什么时间、什么地点、和谁一起玩等方面进行描述。介绍运动员，从介绍他的年龄、身高、比赛经历等方面进行描述。
3. 以表明自己对该运动项目或运动员的喜欢作结尾。

精彩词句：

1. I like … best.　　… is my favourite player.
2. She/He is … years old.　She/He is … metres tall.
3. I want to be a … player like …

经典范文：

My Favourite Player

Of all sports, I like basketball best. Yao Ming is my favourite basketball player. He is 39 years old. He is 2.26 metres tall. He is very tall. His parents are tall, too. They are basketball players, too. Yao Ming played basketball when he was a pupil. He entered (进入) the NBA in 2002. He is hard-working and kind. I want to be a basketball player like him.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Good Health to You!

Lesson 7 Always Have Breakfast!

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. healthy 健康的
2. strong 强壮的;有力的
3. first 第一;首先
4. health 健康
5. last 上一个;最后的
6. once 一次;曾经

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Everyone wants to be healthy and strong. 每个人都想健康和强壮。
2. How often did Danny and Kim have breakfast last week? 上周丹尼和金吃了几次早饭?

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Healthy and strong

原 文	译 文
Everyone wants to be healthy and strong.	每个人都想健康和强壮。
How can we be healthy and strong?	我们怎样才能健康和强壮呢?
First, always have breakfast. It's good for you!	首先,坚持吃早饭。这对你有好处!
How often did Danny and Kim have breakfast last week?	上周丹尼和金吃了几次早饭?
Sunday Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday	星期日 星期一 星期二 星期三 星期四 星期五 星期六
Danny had breakfast once last week.	丹尼上周吃了一次早饭。
When did he have breakfast? At about 7:30 on Tuesday morning.	他什么时候吃的早饭? 大概在周二早上七点半。
Kim had breakfast six times last week.	金上周吃了六次早饭。
Good work, Kim!	干得好,金!
Do you always have breakfast, Li Ming?	你坚持吃早饭吗,李明?
Yes. I always have breakfast!	是的。我坚持吃早饭!
Great!	太棒了!

考点突破营

1. Everyone wants to be healthy and strong. 每个人都想健康和强壮。

解析:这是一个一般现在时的陈述句,用来描述普遍性或事实性的内容。everyone 每个人,为复合不定代词,作主语时,谓语动词用第三人称单数形式,want 需要加-s。want to 表示"想要",其后的动词要使用原形。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

例句：Everyone in his class wants to be a teacher like him.

他班里的每个人都想成为像他那样的老师。

2. How often did Danny and Kim have breakfast last week?

上周丹尼和金吃了几次早饭？

解析：这是一个特殊疑问句，how often 是提问频率的特殊疑问词组，意为“多久一次”，常使用 once（一次）、twice（两次）、three times（三次）等来回答。句型结构“How often + 助动词 + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他?”。

例句：How often do you go shopping? 你多久购物一次？

Lesson 8 Always Brush Your Teeth!

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. before 在……之前
2. after 在……之后
3. bad 有害的；糟糕的
4. next 紧接着；下一个的
5. then 然后；接着
6. be bad for... 对……有害
7. before breakfast 在早饭之前
8. after breakfast 在早饭之后
9. get up 起床
10. brush teeth 刷牙

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Before breakfast, he washes his hands and brushes his teeth. 在早饭之前，他洗手刷牙。
2. What do you do before breakfast? 在早饭之前你做什么？

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Before and after

原 文	译 文
Li Ming has breakfast at 7:00 in the morning. Before breakfast, he washes his hands and brushes his teeth. After breakfast, he goes to school.	李明早上七点吃早饭。在早饭之前，他洗手刷牙。在早饭之后，他去上学。
1. before breakfast　2. breakfast 3. after breakfast	1. 在早饭之前　2. 早饭 3. 在早饭之后
Danny never brushes his teeth after dinner. That's bad for his teeth.	丹尼晚饭后从来不刷牙。那对他的牙齿不好。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Jenny's week

原 文	译 文
Jenny goes to school five times a week, from Monday to Friday. She gets up at 7:00 in the morning. First, she washes her hands and face, and then she brushes her teeth. Next, she has breakfast. Then she goes to school. She works hard at school. Saturday and Sunday are different. Jenny doesn't go to school on those days.	詹妮一周去五次学校,从周一到周五。她早上七点起床。首先,她洗手洗脸,然后她刷牙。接下来,她吃早饭。然后她去上学。她在学校努力学习。周六和周日有所不同。詹妮那两天不去学校。
1. Jenny, what do you do before breakfast? I brush my teeth.	1. 詹妮,在早饭之前你做什么? 我刷牙。
2. Why? Because I want strong, healthy teeth.	2. 为什么? 因为我想要坚固健康的牙齿。

考点突破营

1. Before breakfast, he washes his hands and brushes his teeth. 在早饭之前,他洗手刷牙。

解析:这是一个一般现在时的陈述句,表示经常发生的动作或反复发生的动作,before breakfast 意思是"在早饭之前"。在一般现在时中,当主语为第三人称单数时,动词变相应的第三人称单数形式。

例句: After breakfast, he goes to school. 在早饭之后,他去上学。

2. What do you do before breakfast? 在早饭之前你做什么?

解析:这是一个一般现在时的特殊疑问句,就经常发生或反复发生的动作提出疑问。

例句: What do you do after lunch? 在午饭之后你做什么?

Lesson 9 Eat More Vegetables and Fruit!

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. often 常常;经常　　2. how often 多久一次　　3. twice a week 一周两次

二、我要掌握的句型

1. How often does Danny eat vegetables and fruit? 丹尼多久吃一次蔬菜和水果?
2. An apple a day keeps the doctor away! 一天一苹果,医生远离我!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

翻译达人秀

Let's get to work!

课文朗读

原文	译文
How often does Danny eat vegetables and fruit? Let's see. 1. Danny, how often do you eat vegetables? I don't like vegetables very much. I eat potatoes and tomatoes about twice a week. 2. How often do you eat fruit? Three times a week! 3. How often do you eat donuts? Twice a day! After lunch and after dinner. 4. Danny, you need to eat more vegetables and fruit. They're good for you! Thank you, Mr. Wood. I think I need to eat more vegetables and fruit. An apple a day keeps the doctor away!	丹尼多久吃一次蔬菜和水果？让我们看一看。 1. 丹尼，你多久吃一次蔬菜？ 我不怎么喜欢蔬菜。我大概一周吃两次土豆和西红柿。 2. 你多久吃一次水果？ 一周三次！ 3. 你多久吃一次甜甜圈？ 一天两次！午饭后和晚饭后。 4. 丹尼，你需要吃更多蔬菜和水果。它们对你有好处！ 谢谢你，伍德老师。我认为我需要吃更多蔬菜和水果。一天一苹果，医生远离我！

考点突破营

1. How often does Danny eat vegetables and fruit? 丹尼多久吃一次蔬菜和水果？

   解析：这是一个一般现在时的特殊疑问句，how often 是提问频率的特殊疑问词组，意思是"多久一次"。

   例句：How often does Li Ming go back home? 李明多久回家一次？

2. An apple a day keeps the doctor away! 一天一苹果，医生远离我！

   解析：这是一则英语谚语，类似于中国的名言警句或谚语。一般朗朗上口，利于传诵。

   例句：East or west, home is best. 金窝银窝，不如自己的狗窝。

   No pain, no gain. 不劳则无获。

Lesson 10 Exercise

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. exercise 锻炼；练习　2. minute 分(钟)　3. hour 小时　4. how many 多少

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Riding a bike is exercise. 骑自行车是锻炼。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. How many minutes does Danny exercise? 丹尼锻炼多少分钟?
3. I'm going to watch more sports on TV! 我打算在电视上观看更多的体育运动!
4. You have to play sports for exercise! 你必须做体育运动来锻炼!

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

What is exercise?

原 文	译 文
Riding a bike is exercise.	骑自行车是锻炼。
Walking is exercise.	走路是锻炼。
Playing ping-pong is exercise.	打乒乓球是锻炼。
Running is exercise.	跑步是锻炼。
Exercise helps make your body healthy and strong.	锻炼让你的身体健康又强壮。

How many minutes does Danny exercise?

原 文	译 文
1. How often do you exercise, Danny? I walk to school in the morning, and I walk home after school.	1. 你多久锻炼一次,丹尼? 我早上走路去学校,放学走路回家。
2. That's twice a day. How many minutes do you walk? About five minutes.	2. 那就是一天两次。你走路走多少分钟? 大概五分钟。
3. I think you need about an hour of exercise a day, Danny! Okay! I'm going to watch more sports on TV! No, Danny! You have to play sports for exercise!	3. 我认为你一天需要大概一个小时的锻炼,丹尼! 好! 我打算在电视上观看更多的体育运动! 不,丹尼! 你必须做体育运动来锻炼!

考点突破营

1. Riding a bike is exercise. 骑自行车是锻炼。

   解析:这是一个陈述句。动名词短语作主语,谓语动词用单数。此句中的 exercise 为不可数名词,是"锻炼"的意思。

   例句:Eating fruit is good for you. 吃水果对你有好处。

2. How many minutes does Danny exercise? 丹尼锻炼多少分钟?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

解析：这是一个特殊疑问句，用来询问做某事花费的时间，how many 意为“多少”，后接可数名词的复数形式。此句中的 exercise 为动词。

例句：How many minutes do you read? 你阅读多少分钟？

How many minutes does he sleep? 他睡多少分钟？

3. I'm going to watch more sports on TV! 我打算在电视上观看更多的体育运动！

解析：这是一个一般将来时的陈述句，用来表示计划、打算做某事，用“be going to + 动词原形”来表示。

例句：I'm going to see my teacher. 我打算见我的老师。

4. You have to play sports for exercise! 你必须做体育运动来锻炼！

解析：这是一个一般现在时的陈述句。have to 意思为“不得不；必须”，后接动词原形。

例句：You have to finish your homework first. 你必须先完成你的作业。

Lesson 11 Work Hard!

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. high 高；高的；在高处
2. important 重要的
3. else 其他的；别的
4. low 低；低的；在底部的
5. bedroom 卧室
6. work hard 努力工作
7. on time 准时
8. have fun with... 和……玩得开心

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Do you think it's important to work hard? 你认为努力工作重要吗？
2. What else do you do at home? 你在家还做什么？

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

You can do it!

原 文	译 文
Jenny, do you think it's important to work hard?	詹妮，你认为努力工作重要吗？
Yes, I do. I work hard at school, at home and at sports.	是的，我认为重要。我在学校、在家和在运动方面都很努力。
1. I always go to school on time.	1. 我总是按时到校。
2. I always do my homework.	2. 我总是做我的作业。
high　low	高；高的；在高处　低；低的；在底部的
3. I do exercise every day!	3. 我每天锻炼！
4. I have fun with my friends.	4. 我和我的朋友们玩得高兴。
5. I help my parents.	5. 我帮助我的父母。
6. I clean my bedroom.	6. 我打扫我的卧室。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Does Kim work hard?

原 文	译 文
1. Kim, do you help your family? Yes! I always dry the dishes after dinner. 2. I often water the flowers at home. That's good. 3. What else do you do at home? I clean my bedroom on Saturdays. 4. Before I go to school, I always make my lunch. Good work, Kim!	1. 金,你帮助你的家人吗? 是的!晚饭后我总是擦干盘子。 2. 我在家经常浇花。 那很好。 3. 你在家还做别的什么? 我周六打扫我的卧室。 4. 在去上学之前,我总是做好我的午饭。 干得好,金!

考点突破营

1. Do you think it's important to work hard? 你认为努力工作重要吗?
   解析:这是一个含有宾语从句的复合句,由"Do you think + 从句"构成,注意后边的从句必须是陈述句语序,即按照"主语 + 谓语"的顺序。
   例句:Do you think Tom is right? 你认为汤姆是对的吗?
2. What else do you do at home? 你在家还做别的什么?
   解析:这是一个特殊疑问句,what else 意思是"其他的什么;别的什么"。
   例句:What else do you need? 你还需要别的什么?

Lesson 12 Helen Keller

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Story time

原 文	译 文
1. Helen Keller was born in the U.S. in 1880. When she was 18 months old, she fell ill and became deaf and blind. 2. Her parents loved her very much, but they did not know how to help her. 3. She couldn't see anything. She couldn't hear anything. She couldn't speak at all. Helen often got angry. Sometimes, she threw her food from the table.	1. 海伦·凯勒于1880年生于美国。当她18个月大的时候,她生病了,变得失明失聪。 2. 她的父母非常爱她,但是他们不知道如何帮她。 3. 她看不到任何东西。她听不到任何声音。她根本不会说话。海伦经常生气。有时,她把食物从桌子上扔下去。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

原文	译文
4. In 1887, her parents met a teacher, Anne Sullivan. Anne became Helen's friend. She wanted to teach Helen words. But it was very hard.	4. 1887年,她的父母遇到一位老师,安妮·莎莉文。安妮成为了海伦的朋友。她想教海伦识字。但这很难。
5. One day, Anne took Helen's hand and let her feel the water. She wrote the word "water" on the back of Helen's hand. And Helen got it.	5. 一天,安妮牵着海伦的手让她感受水。她在海伦的手背上写下"水"这个单词。而且海伦懂了。
6. From that day on, Helen Keller began to study every day. She worked very hard. Helen learned many new words every day.	6. 从那天起,海伦·凯勒开始每天学习。她学习非常努力。海伦每天学习好多新的单词。
7. She learned to speak, read and write. When she was 20 years old, she went to university. Later, she became a great writer.	7. 她学习说话、阅读和写作。当她20岁时,她上了大学。后来,她成为了一名伟大的作家。
8. One of her famous books is *The Story of My Life*. Helen's story gives everyone hope.	8. 她的著作之一是《我的一生》。海伦的故事给了每个人希望。

我是小作家

How to Be Healthy and Strong?

思维步骤:

1. 先要认真审题。通常情况下,这个单元的话题有以下几个:(1)你想变得健壮吗?你是怎么做的?这种情况下需要使用第一人称,写清楚自己怎么做就可以。(2)请给你的朋友一些建议,怎样让他变得健康又强壮。这种情况下要使用祈使句,相对委婉地向朋友提出建议。
2. 把坚持吃早餐、一天刷两次牙、多吃蔬菜水果、经常锻炼、在家经常做家务等内容条理清楚、衔接自然地写出来,作为文章的主要内容。
3. 结束句写对自己或对朋友的期望。

精彩词句:

1. want to do …
2. How to be healthy and strong?
3. get up; have breakfast; brush your teeth; do exercise; eat more vegetables and fruit; work hard; be good for
4. I think you will be healthy and strong.

经典范文:

How to Be Healthy and Strong?

Everyone wants to be healthy and strong, but how to be healthy and strong? Always have breakfast. That's good for you. Brush your teeth after breakfast and after dinner, and you will have healthy and strong teeth. Do exercise every day to make your body healthy and strong. Eat more vegetables and fruit. Please work hard at school, at home and at sports. I think you will be healthy and strong.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 What Will You Do This Summer?

Lesson 13 Summer Is Coming!

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. fan 风扇;扇子;扇　2. cloud 云　3. happen 发生　4. leaves 叶子(*leaf* 的复数形式)
5. sit in the sun 坐在阳光下　6. look at the clouds 看云

二、我要掌握的句型

1. What happens to trees in different seasons? 在不同的季节树发生了什么变化呢?
2. Many trees don't have any leaves. 很多树都没有叶子。
3. In summer, I like to swim. 在夏天,我喜欢游泳。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

What season is it?

原 文	译 文
Hi, class! What happens to trees in different seasons?	嗨,同学们!在不同的季节树发生了什么变化呢?
1. In winter, it's cold and snowy. Many trees don't have any leaves.	1. 冬天,天气寒冷且多雪。很多树都没有叶子。
2. In spring, the weather is warm. Trees have new leaves.	2. 春天,天气温暖。树长出新的叶子。
3. It's hot in summer. Trees have green leaves.	3. 夏天天气炎热。树长着绿色的叶子。
4. In autumn, trees lose their leaves.	4. 秋天,树的叶子掉下来。
What colour are the leaves?	叶子是什么颜色的?
Yellow, orange and red.	黄色、橙色和红色。

Summer fun

原 文	译 文
I love summer! In summer, I like to swim.	我喜欢夏天!在夏天,我喜欢游泳。
I like to sit in the sun.	我喜欢坐在阳光下。
Summer is hot. I like the fan. It's cool.	夏天很热。我喜欢吹风扇。很凉爽。
Sometimes I play sports with my friends.	有时我和朋友们做体育运动。
Sometimes I fly a kite.	有时我放风筝。
Sometimes I like to look at the clouds.	有时我喜欢看云。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考点突破营

1. What happens to trees in different seasons?　在不同的季节树发生了什么变化呢？

   解析：这是一个特殊疑问句，what happens 意思是“发生了什么”，当询问某人或者某物经常性地发生了什么事情时，可以用此句型。

   例句：What happens to the river every year?　这条河每年都会发生什么？

2. Many trees don't have any leaves.　很多树都没有叶子。

   解析：这是一个表示否定的陈述句。在否定句中表示“一些”或“任一”，使用 any，其后接可数名词的复数形式或不可数名词。

   例句：We don't have any water.　我们一点儿水也没有了。

3. In summer, I like to swim.　在夏天，我喜欢游泳。

   解析：这是一个陈述句。in summer 在夏天，是时间状语，既可放在句子的最前面，也可以放在句子的末尾。

   例句：In winter, I like to make snowmen.　在冬天，我喜欢堆雪人。

Lesson 14 Tomorrow We Will Play

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. close 关；关闭；合上　2. angry 发怒的；生气的　3. pick the flowers 摘花

二、我要掌握的句型

1. What will we do? 我们将要做什么？　2. We will go to the park. 我们将去公园。
3. I will not fly a kite! 我将不会放风筝！

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

What will you do tomorrow?

原 文	译 文
Tomorrow is Saturday. What will we do?	明天是周六。我们将要做什么？
We will go to the park. We will fly a kite.	我们将去公园。我们将要放风筝。
1. I will not fly a kite!	1. 我将不会放风筝！
2. I will look at the beautiful flowers in the park.	2. 我将去看公园里美丽的花朵。
3. I will pick some flowers for my mother!	3. 我将为我的妈妈摘些花！
4. Danny! You can't pick the flowers in the park! Oh!	4. 丹尼！你不能在公园里摘花！哦！
5. Err...Then I will run home and close the door.	5. 呃……然后我会跑回家关上门。
6. Danny, that's wrong. Sorry. Don't be angry. I will not do it.	6. 丹尼，那不对。对不起。不要生气。我不会那样做的。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考点突破营

1. What will we do? 我们将要做什么？
   解析：这是 what 引导的特殊疑问句，时态为一般将来时，句型结构为“What + will + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他?”。一般将来时与 tomorrow（明天），next Sunday（下周日）等表示未来的时间状语连用。
   例句：What will she do this Sunday? 这个周日她将会做什么？
2. We will go to the park. 我们将去公园。
   解析：这是一个一般将来时的肯定句，表示将要发生的动作，will 意思是“将要”，句型结构为“主语 + will + 动词原形 + 其他.”。
   例句：He will go to Canada soon. 他很快就要去加拿大了。
3. I will not fly a kite! 我将不会放风筝！
   解析：这是一个一般将来时的否定句，用来表示将不会做某事。句型结构为“主语 + will not + 动词原形 + 其他.”。
   例句：They will not go to Beijing tomorrow. 他们明天将不会去北京。

Lesson 15 Jenny's Summer Holiday

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. lake 湖
2. swim 游泳（过去式为 *swam*）
3. ship 船；舰
4. beach 海滩；沙滩；湖滨
5. sea 海；海洋
6. soon 很快；马上
7. trip 旅行
8. go on trips 去旅行

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Last summer, we went to a lake with my grandmother and grandfather.
   去年夏天，我们和爷爷奶奶去了湖边。
2. What will you do for the summer holiday, Jenny? 你暑假将要做什么，詹妮？

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

What will Jenny do this summer?

原 文	译 文
What will you do for the summer holiday, Jenny?	你暑假将要做什么，詹妮？
My family likes to go on trips in the summer.	我们一家喜欢在夏天去旅行。
1. Last summer, we went to a lake with my grandmother and grandfather. I swam in the lake. I played on the beach. I like playing on the beach!	1. 去年夏天，我们和爷爷奶奶去了湖边。我在湖里游泳了。我在沙滩上玩耍了。我喜欢在沙滩上玩耍！
2. This summer, we will go on a trip to the sea. I will swim in the sea! I will watch the ships and boats on the sea.	2. 今年夏天，我们将要去海边旅行。我将要在海里游泳！我将要看海面上的大船和小船。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考点突破营

1. Last summer, we went to a lake with my grandmother and grandfather.
去年夏天,我们和爷爷奶奶去了湖边。
解析:这是一个一般过去时的句子。last summer 意思是“去年夏天”,是表示过去的时间状语,句子中的动词使用过去式。
例句:Last Saturday, we played football. 上周六,我们踢了足球。
2. What will you do for the summer holiday, Jenny? 你暑假将要做什么,詹妮?
解析:这是一个特殊疑问句,时态为一般将来时,询问某人将要做什么,其结构是“What + will + 主语 + do + 其他?”。
例句:What will you do after class? 下课后你将做什么?

Lesson 16 Li Ming's Summer Holiday

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. visit 拜访;参观　　2. say hello to... 向……问好　　3. fly home 乘飞机回家

二、我要掌握的句型

On June 25, I will fly home. 在 6 月 25 日,我将乘飞机回家。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

What will Li Ming do this summer?

原 文	译 文
What will you do for the summer holiday, Li Ming?	暑假你将要做什么,李明?
On June 25, I will fly home. I will be in China for the summer holiday.	在 6 月 25 日,我将乘飞机回家。我将在中国度过暑假。
I will say hello to my mother and father.	我将会向我的父母问好。
I will visit my aunt and uncle.	我将会看望我的叔叔婶婶。
I will play with my cousin, Jing.	我将会和我的堂妹静一起玩。
I will meet my friends.	我将会见我的朋友们。
I will play ping-pong with them.	我会和他们一起打乒乓球。
I will miss Canada, but I will feel happy to see China again.	我将会想念加拿大,但是再去中国看看我感到很高兴。
Danny and I will miss you, too. We will call you!	我和丹尼也会想念你的。我们会给你打电话的!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考点突破营

On June 25, I will fly home. 在6月25日,我将乘飞机回家。

解析:这是一个一般将来时的陈述句,用于描述在将来某个时间要做什么。介词on用于表示确定的时间,具体的某一天或某一天的上午、下午、晚上或一般节日等。fly home意思是"乘飞机回家"。

例句:on Monday 在星期一　　on a cold morning 在一个寒冷的早晨

on December 1st 在12月1日　　on Christmas Day 在圣诞节那天

Lesson 17 Danny's Summer Holiday

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. clever 聪明的　　2. forest 森林　　3. really 真正地;的确;真的吗?(表语气)

二、我要掌握的句型

1. And I also learned to fish. 并且我还学了钓鱼。
2. Will you swim in the sea? 你将在海里游泳吗?

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

What will Danny do this summer?

原文	译文
1. What will you do this summer holiday, Danny? Let's see. Last summer, I learned to swim. And I also learned to fish. What will I do this summer?	1. 这个暑假你将会做什么,丹尼? 让我想想。去年夏天,我学了游泳。并且我还学了钓鱼。今年夏天我将做些什么呢?
2. Will you swim in the sea? No, I will not. Will you visit your family? Yes, I will. I will visit my grandfather and grandmother. They live near a very big forest.	2. 你将在海里游泳吗? 不,我不会。 你将去看望你的家人吗? 是的,我会。我将去看望我的爷爷和奶奶。他们住在一片很大的森林附近。
3. What else will you do? I will also learn to fly. Really, Danny? Why will you do that? I will fly to China.	3. 你还将做些什么呢? 我还将学习飞行。 真的吗,丹尼?为什么你将要做那件事? 我将要飞到中国去。
4. I will play with Li Ming. That will be fun. Very clever, Danny.	4. 我将和李明一起玩。那会很有趣。 真聪明,丹尼。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考点突破营

1. And I also learned to fish. 并且我还学了钓鱼。

解析：这是一个一般过去时的陈述句，描述过去的动作或者状态。also 是副词，通常置于实义动词之前或 be 动词之后，表示“也；而且”的意思。

例句：We also sang songs. 我们还唱了歌。

2. Will you swim in the sea? 你将在海里游泳吗？

解析：这是一个一般疑问句，时态为一般将来时，用于询问将来是否会做某事，句型结构为“Will + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他?”。

例句：Will he go to Shanghai tomorrow? 他明天将去上海吗？

Lesson 18 Three Kites in the Sky

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Story time

原 文	译 文
1. Today is a wonderful day. The wind is not too strong. Three kites are flying high in the blue sky.	1. 今天天气很棒。风力不太强。三只风筝高高地飞在蓝天上。
2. Kylie is a beautiful kite. She has many colours and a long red tail. Everyone will look up at me. Everyone will like me.	2. 凯莉是一只漂亮的风筝。她有五彩斑斓的颜色和一条长长的红尾巴。 每个人都将抬头看我。 每个人都会喜欢我。
3. The second kite's name is Karla. She is strong. She can fly very high in the sky. Look at me. I can fly high and fast. Everyone will like me.	3. 第二只风筝的名字叫卡拉。她很强壮。她能在空中飞得很高。 看我。我能飞得很高很快。每个人都会喜欢我。
4. The third kite, Krista, is listening. She is not beautiful. She is not fast. She is not strong. She is only a kite.	4. 第三只风筝克丽丝塔正在听着。她不漂亮。她飞得不快。她不强壮。她只是只风筝。
5. Kylie thinks about her beautiful colours. Karla feels the wind and the sun. She flies faster. She flies higher. She wants everyone to see her. How fast I am! How beautiful I am!	5. 凯莉想着她美丽的颜色。卡拉感受着风和阳光。她飞得更快了。她飞得更高了。她想让每个人都看她。 我飞得多快啊！ 我多漂亮啊！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

原 文	译 文
6. Krista sees a boy swimming in the lake. But he can't swim well, and he needs some help. Krista calls the other two kites, but they can't hear.	6. 克丽丝塔看见一个男孩正在湖里游泳。但他游得不好,他需要一些帮助。克丽丝塔呼叫另外两只风筝,但她们听不见。
Hey, Kylie and Karla! The boy needs help!	嘿,凯莉和卡拉!这个男孩需要帮助!
7. Krista is afraid of water, but she wants to help the boy. She flies very low. A man hears Krista. He jumps into the water. He swims to the boy. He brings the boy to the beach.	7. 克丽丝塔害怕水,但她想帮助这个男孩。她飞得很低。一个男人听见了克丽丝塔的声音。他跳进了水里。他游向了这个男孩。他把男孩救上了岸。
HELP! HELP! The boy needs help.	救命!救命!这个男孩需要帮助。
8. Everyone looks at Krista. Now, no one remembers beautiful Kylie. No one remembers strong Karla. But everyone remembers Krista.	8. 每个人都把目光投向克丽丝塔。现在,没人记得漂亮的凯莉。没人记得强壮的卡拉。但每个人都记住了克丽丝塔。
You are a great kite!	你是只很棒的风筝!
You are so nice!	你真好啊!

我是小作家

My Summer Holiday

思维步骤:

1. 首先确定要用一般将来时制订暑期计划,所以短文中大多数句子都要以一般将来时的形式出现。如果短文中提到去年暑假你是怎么过的,要在短文的开始部分先以过去时态简单交代一下去年暑假的主要活动,再用一般将来时态介绍今年的计划。
2. 制订计划要从以下几个方面入手:准备去哪儿?什么时候去?和谁一起去?在那儿做些什么?也可以只描述做些什么。描述时要条理清楚,过渡自然。
3. 最后以对这个暑假的期待结尾。

精彩词句:

1. This summer holiday, I will …
2. go on a trip; visit; play with
3. I will have a happy summer holiday.

经典范文:

My Summer Holiday

This summer holiday, I will leave my school and go to junior high school. I will not have homework. But I will learn math and English by myself. I will go on a trip to Beijing. I will visit Peking University. That's my favourite university. And I will read some interesting books. I will play with my friends. I will have a happy summer holiday.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 Li Ming Comes Home

Lesson 19 Buying Gifts

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. fly home 乘飞机回家　　2. next week 下周

二、我要掌握的句型

1. How many gifts do you need? 你需要多少件礼物?
2. Here are some little flags. 这里有一些小旗子。
3. What about these caps? 这些帽子怎么样?

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

At the shop

原 文	译 文
Li Ming will fly home next week. He wants to buy some gifts for his family.	李明下周将乘飞机回家。他想给家人买些礼物。
How many gifts do you need, Li Ming?	你需要多少件礼物,李明?
I need eleven gifts. I need a gift for everyone in my family.	我需要十一件礼物。我需要给家里每个人一件礼物。
"Here are some little flags," says Jenny.	"这里有一些小旗子。"詹妮说。
"Good idea! I'll take three," says Li Ming.	"好主意! 我要三面。"李明说。
"What about these caps?" Jenny asks.	"这些帽子怎么样?"詹妮问。
"Okay, I'll take four," says Li Ming.	"可以,我要四顶。"李明说。
"Look at these T-shirts," says Jenny. "These are good gifts from Canada."	"看看这些T恤衫。"詹妮说,"这些都是来自加拿大的好礼物。"
"Great! I'll take three T-shirts. And I want a toy for my cousin," says Li Ming.	"太好了! 我要三件T恤衫。并且我要给我的堂妹买个玩具。"李明说。
I want to buy a surprise for Jenny. Is she looking? No?	我想要给詹妮买一件惊喜礼物。她在看着吗? 没有?
Okay. I will buy it now.	好的。我现在就买。

考点突破营

1. How many gifts do you need? 你需要多少件礼物?

解析:这是一个特殊疑问句,用来询问需要物品的数量,how many 意为"多少",后接可数名词的复数形式。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. Here are some little flags. 这里有一些小旗子。

解析:这是一个倒装句。在以 here, there 等表示方位的副词开头的句子中,当主语是名词时,要用倒装句,谓语动词的形式由位于倒装句句尾的主语决定。

例句:Here is a flower. 这儿有一朵花。

易错点提示

如果主语是人称代词,则不再用倒装。

例句:There he is! 他在那儿!

3. What about these caps? 这些帽子怎么样?

解析:这是一个特殊疑问句,what about 意思是"怎么样",用来征询对方的意见或者提供建议,句型结构为"What about ...?"。

Lesson 20 Looking at Photos

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. find 发现;找到(过去式为 *found*)
2. get 开始;得到(过去式为 *got*)

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —What are you doing, Li Ming? 你正在做什么,李明?
   —I'm getting ready to go home next week. 我正在为下周回家做准备。
2. I found these photos! 我发现了这些照片!
3. Do you remember? 你记得吗?

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Do you remember?

原 文	译 文
1. What are you doing, Li Ming? I'm getting ready to go home next week. 2. Look! I found these photos! May I see them? Sure. Look at this photo. Danny wanted to play basketball with a ping-pong ball! Danny said the basketball was heavy. Then I taught him to play ping-pong, but he hit his hand. Poor Danny! Look, Li Ming! Here's a photo of you, Danny and Santa. Do you remember? Oh, yes! I went to the shop with Danny. We bought Christmas gifts. Then we saw Santa. We talked to Santa.	1. 你正在做什么,李明? 我正在为下周回家做准备。 2. 看!我发现了这些照片! 我可以看看它们吗? 当然。 看这张照片。丹尼想用乒乓球打篮球! 丹尼说篮球重。 然后我教他打乒乓球,但是他打到手了。可怜的丹尼! 看,李明!这里有一张你、丹尼和圣诞老人的照片。你记得吗? 噢,是的!我和丹尼去了商店。我们买了圣诞礼物。然后我们看到了圣诞老人。我们和圣诞老人说了话。

考点突破营

1. —What are you doing, Li Ming? 你正在做什么,李明?

   —I'm getting ready to go home next week. 我在为下周回家做准备。

   解析:这是一组现在进行时的问答句,表示正在进行的动作或者存在的状态。get ready 的意思为"做准备",其后既可接"for + 名词",也可以接"to + 动词原形"。

2. I found these photos! 我发现了这些照片!

   解析:这是一个一般过去时的陈述句,表示在过去发生的动作,found 是 find 的过去式,意为"发现;找到"。

3. Do you remember? 你记得吗?

   解析:这是一个一般现在时的一般疑问句,用来询问对方是否记得。remember 的意思为"记得;想起"。

   例句:Please remember your number. 请记住你的号码。

Lesson 21 A Party for Li Ming

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. party 聚会;晚会
2. tell 告诉;讲述
3. begin 开始
4. late 晚的;迟到的
5. early 早的;早到的
6. a surprise party 一个惊喜派对(惊喜聚会)
7. a good-bye party 一个告别聚会

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Li Ming is leaving soon. 李明不久就要离开了。
2. Will we tell Li Ming about the party? 我们要告诉李明关于聚会的事吗?
3. —What time does it begin? 它(聚会)几点开始?

   —At 4:00 in the afternoon. 下午四点。

4. Don't be late! 不要迟到!

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Make a call

原 文	译 文
1. Li Ming is leaving soon. Let's have a good-bye party for him. Okay! I will invite some friends. 2. Will we tell Li Ming about the party? No. Let's have a surprise party for him!	1. 李明不久就要离开了。让我们为他举办一个告别聚会吧。 好！我将要邀请一些朋友。 2. 我们要告诉李明关于聚会的事吗？ 不。让我们给他办一个惊喜聚会吧！
Jenny calls Steven.	詹妮给史蒂文打电话。
Steven: Hello?	**史蒂文**：哪位？
Jenny: Hi, Steven. It's Jenny calling. Would you come to a party for Li Ming?	**詹妮**：嗨，史蒂文。我是詹妮。你愿意来参加为李明举办的聚会吗？
Steven: Sure! When is the party?	**史蒂文**：当然！聚会在什么时候？
Jenny: Tomorrow. It's a surprise for Li Ming. Please don't tell him.	**詹妮**：明天。是给李明的一个惊喜。请不要告诉他。
Steven: Okay. What time does it begin?	**史蒂文**：好的。它（聚会）几点开始？
Jenny: At 4:00 in the afternoon. Don't be late! We want to surprise Li Ming!	**詹妮**：下午四点。不要迟到！我们想给李明一个惊喜！
Steven: Okay, I will come before 4:00. Then I will be early!	**史蒂文**：好的，我将在四点以前到。我会早点到的！
Jenny: Great! See you tomorrow!	**詹妮**：太好了！明天见！
How many people are coming to the party, Jenny? Let's see... you, me, Li Ming, Steven, Kim, my sister, Mr. Wood, my mum and my dad. Nine!	多少人要来参加聚会，詹妮？让我想想……你、我、李明、史蒂文、金、我妹妹、伍德老师、我妈妈和我爸爸。九个人！

考点突破营

1. Li Ming is leaving soon. 李明不久就要离开了。
   解析：这是一个现在进行时表示将来的句子，leaving 是 leave 的现在分词形式，soon 意思是“很快；马上”。
2. Will we tell Li Ming about the party? 我们要告诉李明关于聚会的事吗？

解析：这是一个一般将来时的一般疑问句，用来询问将来是否要做某事。tell 的意思是“告诉，讲述”，用法为 tell somebody about something 告诉某人关于某事。

3. —What time does it begin? 它(聚会)几点开始?
—At 4:00 in the afternoon. 下午四点。
解析：这是一个 what time 引导的特殊疑问句，用来询问做某事的具体时间。begin 的意思是“开始”。回答时一般要答出具体时间。表示在具体的时间点，要用介词 at；在上午/下午/晚上用介词 in。

4. Don't be late! 不要迟到!
解析：这是一个表否定的祈使句，用 don't 引导，其后接动词原形。late 为形容词，意思是“晚的；迟到的”。

Lesson 22 Surprise!

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. cake 蛋糕　2. every 每个(人或物)　3. all 全部；所有的

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Mr. Smith will bring Li Ming home at 4:00. 四点史密斯先生将带李明回家。
2. That's when the party begins! 那是聚会开始的时间!
3. Every cookie has letters! 每个小甜饼上都有字母!
4. At 3: 45, all of the people arrive for the party, but not Kim.
在三点四十五，所有人都到了聚会，除了金。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

A surprise party

原 文	译 文
Today is Li Ming's surprise party. Mr. Smith and Li Ming are shopping. Mr. Smith will bring Li Ming home at 4:00. That's when the party begins! Mr. Smith knows about the party, but Li Ming doesn't.	今天是李明的惊喜聚会。史密斯先生和李明正在购物。四点史密斯先生将带李明回家。那是聚会开始的时间! 史密斯先生知道这个聚会，但是李明不知道。
Ding-dong.	叮咚。
Danny opens the door. It's Steven!	丹尼打开门。是史蒂文!
“Hi! I'm here early,” says Steven. “Do you need any help?”	“嗨! 我早点到了。”史蒂文说，“你们需要帮助吗?”
“Yes! Come to the kitchen!” says Danny.	“是的! 到厨房里来!”丹尼说。
Danny, Jenny and Steven make a beautiful cake and nine cookies. Look! Every cookie has letters! This is for me! That is for you!	丹尼、詹妮和史蒂文做了一个漂亮的蛋糕和九个小甜饼。看! 每个小甜饼上都有字母! 这个是我的! 那个是你的!

原 文	译 文
At 3:45, all of the people arrive for the party, but not Kim. Oh! Here she comes. She went to the shop and bought some ice cream.	在三点四十五,所有人都到了聚会,除了金。哦!她来了。她去商店买了一些冰淇淋。
At 4:00, Li Ming arrives with Mr. Smith. Li Ming opens the door.	四点,李明和史密斯先生到了。李明开了门。
Surprise!	惊喜!

考点突破营

1. Mr. Smith will bring Li Ming home at 4:00. 四点史密斯先生将带李明回家。

   解析:这是一个一般将来时的陈述句,bring 是动词,意为"带来",可接表示人或物的名词或者代词作宾语。也可以用介词 to 引出地点状语,如 bring Jenny to the lake 带詹妮去湖边。

2. That's when the party begins! 那是聚会开始的时间!

   解析:这是一个包含表语从句的陈述句,系动词后边的表语是一个句子,所以称为表语从句,when 引导的从句和时间有关。

3. Every cookie has letters! 每个小甜饼上都有字母!

   解析:这是一个一般现在时的陈述句。every 的意思为"每一个",强调个体。

4. At 3: 45, all of the people arrive for the party, but not Kim.

   在三点四十五,所有人都到了聚会,除了金。

   解析:这是一个一般现在时的句子,but not Kim 表示转折,意思是"但是没有金"。all 的意思是"全部,所有的",代指整体,常用 all of + 可数名词复数或不可数名词,表示"全部……"。

Lesson 23 Good-bye!

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. good-bye 再见
2. hear 听见;听到
3. airport 机场
4. dragon 龙
5. forget 忘记
6. leave 离开
7. sadly 悲哀地;伤心地

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Li Ming is leaving for China. 李明将要动身去中国了。
2. He gives Danny a gift. 他送给丹尼一个礼物。
3. I won't forget China! 我不会忘记中国的!

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

At the airport

原 文	译 文
Li Ming is leaving for China. He has a surprise for Jenny and a surprise for Danny, too.	李明将要动身去中国了。他有一个惊喜给詹妮,也有一个惊喜给丹尼。
Listen! "The plane for Beijing will leave soon." "Did you hear that? It's time for me to go," Li Ming says to Jenny and Danny. "But first, I have something for you."	听!"到北京的飞机很快就要起飞了。""你们听到了吗?我该走了。"李明对詹妮和丹尼说。"但是首先,我有东西给你们。"
"You do?" says Danny. "I love surprises. What is it?"	"你有东西给我们?"丹尼说。"我喜欢惊喜。它是什么?"
"Open it!" says Li Ming. He gives Danny a gift.	"打开它!"李明说。他送给丹尼一个礼物。
"Oh. It's a kite," says Danny a little sadly.	"哦。是一只风筝。"丹尼有点儿伤心地说。
"Yes! It's a good Chinese kite, Danny. You can fly it! I know you can!" says Li Ming.	"是的!这是一只很好的中国风筝,丹尼。你能放飞它的!我知道你能!"李明说。
"Thanks, Li Ming!" says Danny. "You're a good friend!"	"谢谢,李明!"丹尼说,"你是一个很好的朋友!"
"This is for you, Jenny," says Li Ming. Jenny opens her gift. "Oh! It's a little, red dragon!" she says.	"这个是给你的,詹妮。"李明说。詹妮打开了她的礼物。"哦!是一个红色的小龙!"她说。
"Yes. I want you to remember China," says Li Ming.	"是的。我想让你记住中国。"李明说。
"Thanks, Li Ming! I won't forget China!"	"谢谢,李明!我不会忘记中国的!"
Have a good trip!	旅途愉快!
Don't forget to write!	不要忘记写信!
Good-bye!	再见!

考点突破营

1. Li Ming is leaving for China. 李明将要动身去中国了。
   解析:这是一个现在进行时的陈述句,leave for 意为"动身去某地",本句是用现在进行时表将来的概念。
2. He gives Danny a gift. 他送给丹尼一个礼物。

解析:这是一个包含两个宾语的陈述句,give 意思是“给”,give somebody something,“给某人某物”,也可以用 give something to somebody“把某物给某人”来表达。

例句:My mother gives me a new schoolbag. 我妈妈给了我一个新书包。

3. I won't forget China! 我不会忘记中国的!

解析:这是一个表否定的一般将来时的陈述句,表示不会发生某事。forget 的意思是“忘记”,过去式为 forgot,既可以接动名词,也可以接不定式,还可以直接接名词。

例句:I forgot to bring my English book. 我忘带英语书了。

Lesson 24 Danny's Surprise Cake

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Story time

原 文	译 文
1. Danny gets up early in the morning. Today is the last day of school. His class is going to have a party. He is going to make a cake. What do I need? I think I remember.	1. 丹尼早上起床很早。今天是上学的最后一天。他的班级将要举行一个聚会。他打算制作一个蛋糕。 我需要什么?我认为我记着呢。
2. When the cake is cool, he makes a special picture on it. Danny takes his cake to school. He walks slowly because the cake is heavy. There!	2. 蛋糕凉了的时候,他在上面制作了一幅特殊的图画。丹尼带着他的蛋糕去学校。他走得很慢,因为蛋糕很沉。 好了!
3. In the afternoon, the class party begins. Mr. Wood brings some ice cream. Jenny brings some cookies. Every cookie looks like a student in the class!	3. 下午,班级聚会开始了。伍德老师带来了一些冰淇淋。詹妮带了一些小甜饼。每个小甜饼看起来就像是班里的一个学生!
4. Danny's cake is special, too. “It looks great, Danny!” says Jenny. “Thanks! It's a surprise cake,” says Danny. What's the surprise? You will see!	4. 丹尼的蛋糕也很特别。“它看起来很棒,丹尼!”詹妮说。“谢谢!它是一个惊喜蛋糕。”丹尼说。 什么惊喜? 你会看到的!
5. Everyone has a cookie, a piece of cake and some ice cream. Then a girl says, “Danny, I think you forgot something.” Oh, no! The cake isn't good! Danny forgot the sugar! Is that the surprise? No.	5. 每个人都有一个小甜饼、一块蛋糕和一些冰淇淋。后来一个女孩说:“丹尼,我认为你忘了放一些东西。”哦,不!蛋糕不好吃!丹尼忘记放糖了! 那就是惊喜吗? 不。

原 文	译 文
6. Soon everyone has a dollar. Every piece of cake has a dollar in it! "That's the surprise!" says Danny. "Thanks, Danny! This cake is the best!" everyone says. Look! I found a dollar in my cake! Me, too! 7. Mr. Wood gets a box and puts a piece of surprise cake in it. Then he writes Li Ming's address on the box. Let's send Li Ming a piece of cake! 8. A week later, Li Ming gets a box from Canada. Inside, he finds a piece of very old, very dry cake! There is a letter, too. Li Ming looks inside the cake. Dear Li Ming, This is a piece of surprise cake. It has two surprises. It isn't good to eat. That's the first surprise. Danny made it and he forgot the sugar. The second surprise is inside the cake! We miss you! From Mr. Wood and your friends in Canada. Thanks, Danny!	6. 很快,每个人都有一美元,每块蛋糕里面都有一美元! "那才是惊喜!"丹尼说。"谢谢,丹尼!这个蛋糕是最棒的!"大家说。 看!在我的蛋糕里我发现了一美元! 我也是! 7. 伍德老师拿来一个盒子,并且在里面放了一块惊喜蛋糕。然后他在盒子上写上李明的地址。 让我们给李明寄一块蛋糕吧! 8. 一周后,李明收到了一个加拿大来的包裹。在里面,他发现了一块放了很久的,很干的蛋糕!还有一封信。李明朝着蛋糕里面看。 亲爱的李明: 这是一块惊喜蛋糕。它有两个惊喜。它不好吃。这是第一个惊喜。丹尼制作时忘了放糖。第二个惊喜就在蛋糕里面! 我们想念你! 来自伍德先生及你在加拿大的朋友。 谢谢,丹尼!

我是小作家

A Party

思维步骤:

1. 认真审题,弄清楚要描写的聚会的类型,是描写任意一个聚会,还是指定的生日聚会、惊喜聚会或告别聚会。描写中,必须要有跟聚会主题相匹配的内容以点明主题。
2. 在短文中要写清楚聚会的目的、时间、地点、参加的人,以及聚会过程中人们的活动。如果是计划一场聚会,也要从这几个方面去安排。
3. 最后以描述大家在这个聚会中的感受为结尾。

精彩词句:

1. ... we had a ... party in ...
2. It began at ... sing songs; dance; make dumplings
3. We were happy.

经典范文:

A Good-bye Party

This summer, we will leave our school. Last Friday, we had a good-bye party in our classroom. It began at 4:30 in the afternoon. We decorated our classroom. It was very beautiful. We said thanks to our teachers. We sang songs and danced. And we made dumplings with our teachers. They were delicious. We were happy. We won't forget our teachers, friends and school.

课时同步知识梳理

Unit 1 Sports

Lesson 1 Ping-pong and Basketball

一、**核心词汇**。(英汉互译)

1. 运动_____
2. 足球_____
3. 任一;一些_____
4. 一些_____
5. 穿_____
6. ping-pong _____
7. 踢足球_____
8. 去购物_____

二、**重点句型**。(汉译英)

1. 你做什么体育运动?_____
2. 我踢足球、打乒乓球。_____
3. 在所有的运动项目中,我最喜欢篮球!_____
4. 乒乓球是我最喜欢的运动项目。_____
5. 你能教我打乒乓球吗?_____
6. 你有乒乓球吗?_____
7. 我还需要一件T恤衫。_____
8. 我总是穿着T恤衫打乒乓球。_____
9. 让我们明天去打乒乓球和篮球吧。_____

Lesson 2 At the Sports Shop

一、**核心词汇**。(英汉互译)

1. 或者;还是_____
2. this _____
3. that _____
4. these _____
5. those _____

二、**重点句型**。(汉译英)

1. 打扰一下。你这儿有T恤衫吗?

_____

2. 它们在这儿!

_____

3. 你喜欢这件T恤衫还是那件T恤衫?

_____

4. 你想要这些还是那些?

_____

5. 这些球五美元。

_____

Lesson 3 Let's Play!

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 篮球_____　2. 试;尝试_____　3. 重的_____
4. 困难的;费力的_____　5. 容易的_____　6. 手_____
7. throw _____　8. catch _____　9. hit _____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 你准备好学打篮球了吗？_____
2. 让我试试。_____
3. 我来了！_____
4. 接住篮球！_____
5. 这太难了！_____

Lesson 4 Did You Have Fun?

一、写出下列单词的原形或过去式。

1. go _____　2. _____bought　3. play _____
4. _____ taught　5. want _____　6. hit _____
7. do _____　8. _____thought

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 你们今天玩得高兴吗？_____
2. 我们去了一家商店。_____
3. 李明今天买了一件T恤衫。_____
4. 我教了李明传球和接球。_____

Lesson 5 A Basketball Game

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 比赛;游戏_____　2. 问_____　3. 很;非常_____
4. 回答;答案_____　5. 警察_____　6. team _____
7. won _____　8. everyone _____

二、重点句型。（英汉互译）

1. 你们今天晚上做了什么？_____
2. 我们看鲍勃打篮球了！_____
3. 谁赢了？_____
4. 加油！鲍勃！_____
5. He is a good player._____

Unit 2 Good Health to You!

Lesson 7 Always Have Breakfast!

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 健康的_____　2. 强壮的;有力的_____　3. first _____

4. once _____　5. last week _____　6. six times _____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 每个人都想健康和强壮。_____

2. 我们怎样才能健康和强壮呢?_____

3. 这对你有好处!_____

4. 上周丹尼和金吃了几次早饭?_____

5. 丹尼上周吃了一次早饭。_____

Lesson 8 Always Brush Your Teeth!

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 在……之前_____　2. 在……之后_____　3. 有害的;糟糕的_____

4. 紧接着;下一个的_____　5. brush teeth _____　6. wash hands _____

7. from Monday to Friday _____　8. get up _____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 在早饭之前,他洗手刷牙。_____

2. 在早饭之后,他去上学。_____

3. 那对他的牙齿不好。_____

4. 詹妮一周去五次学校,从周一到周五。_____

5. 在早饭之前你做什么?_____

Lesson 9 Eat More Vegetables and Fruit!

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 常常;经常_____　2. potato _____　3. tomato _____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 丹尼多久吃一次蔬菜和水果?_____

2. 一周三次!_____

Lesson 10 Exercise

一、核心词汇。（汉译英）

1. 锻炼;练习_____ 2. 分(钟)_____ 3. 小时_____

二、重点句型。（英汉互译）

1. 什么是锻炼?

_____

2. 骑自行车是锻炼。

_____

3. 锻炼让你的身体健康又强壮。

_____

4. 丹尼锻炼多少分钟?

_____

5. I think you need about an hour of exercise a day.

_____

6. You have to play sports for exercise!

_____

Lesson 11 Work Hard!

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 高;高的;在高处_____ 2. low _____
3. 努力工作_____ 4. important _____
5. 擦干盘子_____ 6. 浇花_____
7. on time _____ 8. 做我的午饭_____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 我在学校、在家和在运动方面都很努力。

_____

2. 你帮助你的家人吗?

_____

3. 你在家还做别的什么?

_____

Unit 3 What Will You Do This Summer?

Lesson 13 Summer Is Coming!

一、核心词汇。（汉译英）

1. 风扇；扇子；扇_____
2. 春季；春天_____
3. 夏季；夏天_____
4. 秋季；秋天_____
5. 冬季；冬天_____
6. 坐在阳光下_____
7. 放风筝_____
8. 看云_____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 在不同的季节树发生了什么变化呢？

_____

2. 冬天，天气寒冷且多雪。

_____

3. 树长出新的叶子。

_____

4. 叶子是什么颜色的？

_____

5. 有时我和朋友们做体育运动。

_____

6. 很多树都没有叶子。

_____

Lesson 14 Tomorrow We Will Play

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 关；关闭；合上_____
2. 发怒的；生气的_____
3. 看花_____
4. pick the flowers _____
5. wrong _____
6. 跑回家_____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 明天你将做什么？

_____

2. 我们将去公园。

_____

3. 我将不会放风筝！

_____

4. 那不对。

_____

5. 不要生气。

_____

Lesson 15 Jenny's Summer Holiday

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 湖_____
2. 游泳_____
3. 游泳(过去式)_____
4. 船;舰_____
5. 去旅行_____
6. play on the beach _____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 去年夏天,我们和爷爷奶奶去了湖边。_____
2. 我喜欢在沙滩上玩耍!_____
3. 今年夏天,我们将要去海边旅行。_____

Lesson 16 Li Ming's Summer Holiday

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 拜访;参观_____
2. 乘飞机回家_____
3. 暑假_____
4. 向……问好_____
5. miss _____
6. meet _____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 暑假你将要做什么?_____
2. 在6月25日,我将乘飞机回家。_____

Lesson 17 Danny's Summer Holiday

一、核心词汇。（汉译英）

1. 聪明的_____
2. 真正地;的确;真的吗?(表语气)_____
3. 森林_____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 这个暑假你将会做什么?_____
2. 去年夏天,我学了游泳。_____
3. 你将在海里游泳吗?_____
4. 你还将做些什么呢?_____
5. 我还将学习飞行。_____
6. 为什么你将要做那件事?_____

Unit 4 Li Ming Comes Home

Lesson 19 Buying Gifts

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 多少_____
2. 好主意_____
3. 乘飞机回家_____
4. surprise _____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 你需要多少件礼物？_____
2. 我需要给家里每一个人一件礼物。_____
3. 这里有一些小旗子。_____
4. 这些帽子怎么样？_____
5. 我想要给詹妮买一件惊喜礼物。_____

Lesson 20 Looking at Photos

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 发现；找到_____
2. 发现；找到（过去式）_____
3. 开始；得到_____
4. 开始；得到（过去式）_____
5. remember _____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 你正在做什么？

_____

2. 我正在为下周回家做准备。

_____

3. 我发现了这些照片！

_____

4. 我可以看看它们吗？

_____

5. 你记得吗？

_____

Lesson 21 A Party for Li Ming

一、核心词汇。（汉译英）

1. 聚会;晚会_____ 2. 告诉;讲述_____ 3. 开始_____
4. 晚的;迟到的_____ 5. 早的;早到的_____ 6. 一个告别聚会_____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 李明不久就要离开了。_____
2. 让我们为他举办一个告别聚会吧。_____
3. 我们要告诉李明关于聚会的事吗?_____
4. 我是詹妮。（打电话用语）_____
5. 你愿意来参加为李明举办的聚会吗?_____
6. 它（聚会）几点开始?_____
7. 不要迟到!_____

Lesson 22 Surprise!

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 蛋糕_____ 2. 每个（人或物）_____ 3. 全部;所有的_____
4. 一个惊喜聚会_____ 5. cookie _____ 6. all of the people _____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 四点史密斯先生将带李明回家。_____
2. 那是聚会开始的时间!_____
3. 每个小甜饼上都有字母!_____
4. 在三点四十五,所有人都到了聚会,除了金。_____

Lesson 23 Good-bye!

一、核心词汇。（英汉互译）

1. 再见_____ 2. 听见;听到_____ 3. sadly _____ 4. dragon _____

二、重点句型。（汉译英）

1. 李明将要动身去中国了。_____
2. 他有一个惊喜给詹妮,也有一个惊喜给丹尼。_____
3. 旅途愉快!_____
4. 不要忘记写信!_____

期末复习知识梳理

Unit 1 Sports

一、根据汉语意思写出下列单词。

1. 运动_____
2. 足球_____
3. 篮球_____
4. 比赛;游戏_____
5. 手_____
6. 警察_____
7. 任一;一些_____
8. 一些_____
9. 穿_____
10. 试;尝试_____
11. 问_____
12. 回答;答案_____
13. 困难的;费力的_____
14. 容易的_____
15. 很;非常_____
16. 或者;还是_____
17. 重的_____

二、翻译下列句子。

1. 我打篮球、踢足球。_____
2. 你做什么体育运动?_____
3. 在所有的运动项目中,我最喜欢篮球!_____
4. 你喜欢这件T恤衫还是那件T恤衫?_____
5. 你准备好学打篮球了吗?_____
6. 这太难了!这个球太重了!_____
7. 你们今天玩得高兴吗?_____
8. 李明今天买了一件T恤衫。_____
9. 我教詹妮打到球了!_____
10. 但是他觉得篮球太重了。_____
11. 你们今天晚上做了什么?_____
12. 我们看鲍勃打篮球了!_____

Unit 2 Good Health to You!

一、根据汉语意思写出下列单词。

1. 健康的_____
2. 强壮的;有力的_____
3. 有害的;糟糕的_____
4. 紧接着;下一个的_____
5. 高;高的;在高处_____
6. 常常;经常_____
7. 在……之前_____
8. 在……之后_____
9. 锻炼;练习_____
10. 分(钟)_____
11. 小时_____

二、翻译下列句子。

1. 每个人都想健康和强壮。_____
2. 我们怎样才能健康和强壮呢?_____
3. 上周丹尼和金吃了几次早饭?_____
4. 丹尼上周吃了一次早饭。_____
5. 在早饭之前,他洗手刷牙。_____
6. 那对他的牙齿不好。_____
7. 在早饭之前你做什么?_____
8. 你需要吃更多蔬菜水果。_____
9. 那对你有好处。_____
10. 一天一苹果,医生远离我!_____
11. 骑自行车是锻炼。_____
12. 锻炼让你的身体健康又强壮。_____
13. 丹尼锻炼多少分钟?_____

Unit 3 What Will You Do This Summer?

一、根据汉语意思写出下列单词或短语。

1. 风扇;扇子;扇_____
2. 湖_____
3. 船;舰_____
4. 聪明的_____
5. 关;关闭;合上_____
6. 游泳_____
7. 游泳(过去式)_____
8. 拜访;参观_____
9. 发怒的;生气的_____
10. 春季;春天_____
11. 夏季;夏天_____
12. 秋季;秋天_____
13. 冬季;冬天_____
14. 季节_____
15. 暑假_____

二、翻译下列句子。

1. 在不同的季节树发生了什么变化呢?

_____

2. 很多树都没有叶子。

_____

3. 我喜欢坐在阳光下。

_____

4. 明天你将做什么?

_____

5. 我们将去公园。

_____

6. 我将不会放风筝!

_____

7. 不要生气。_____

8. 我在湖里游泳了。

_____

9. 你将在海里游泳吗?_____

Unit 4 Li Ming Comes Home

一、根据汉语意思写出下列单词。

1. 发现;找到_____　　2. 发现;找到(过去式)_____

3. 开始;得到_____　　4. 开始;得到(过去式)_____

5. 告诉;讲述_____　　6. 开始_____

7. 听见;听到_____　　8. 再见_____

9. 聚会;晚会_____　　10. 蛋糕_____

11. 晚的;迟到的_____　　12. 早的;早到的_____

13. 每个(人或物)_____　　14. 全部;所有的_____

二、翻译下列句子。

1. 你需要多少件礼物?_____

2. 这些帽子怎么样?_____

3. 我正在为下周回家做准备。_____

4. 我发现了这些照片!_____

5. 你记得吗?_____

6. 让我们为他举办一个告别聚会吧。_____

7. 我是詹妮。(打电话用语)_____

8. 它(聚会)几点开始?_____

9. 不要迟到!_____

10. 每个小甜饼上都有字母!_____

11. 在三点四十五,所有人都到了聚会,除了金。_____

12. 李明将要动身去中国了。_____

参考答案

课时同步知识梳理

Unit 1 Sports

Lesson 1 Ping-pong and Basketball

一、1. sport 2. football 3. any 4. some 5. wear
6. 乒乓球运动;乒乓 7. play football
8. go shopping

二、1. What sports do you play?
2. I play football and ping-pong.
3. Of all sports, I like basketball best!
4. Ping-pong is my favourite sport.
5. Can you teach me to play ping-pong?
6. Do you have any ping-pong balls?
7. I also need a T-shirt.
8. I always wear a T-shirt to play ping-pong.
9. Let's go to play ping-pong and basketball tomorrow.

Lesson 2 At the Sports Shop

一、1. or 2. 这;这个 3. 那;那个 4. 这些
5. 那些

二、1. Excuse me. Do you have any T-shirts?
2. Here they are!
3. Do you like this T-shirt or that T-shirt?
4. Do you want these or those?
5. These balls are five dollars.

Lesson 3 Let's Play!

一、1. basketball 2. try 3. heavy 4. difficult
5. easy 6. hand 7. 扔;抛;投 8. 接住
9. 击(球);打

二、1. Are you ready to learn to play basketball?
2. Let me try.
3. Here I go!
4. Catch the basketball!
5. This is too difficult!

Lesson 4 Did You Have Fun?

一、1. went 2. buy 3. played 4. teach
5. wanted 6. hit 7. did 8. think

二、1. Did you have fun today?
2. We went to a shop.
3. Li Ming bought a T-shirt today.
4. I taught Li Ming to throw and catch the ball.

Lesson 5 A Basketball Game

一、1. game 2. ask 3. very 4. answer
5. policeman 6. 队;球队
7. 赢(win的过去式) 8. 每个人

二、1. What did you do this evening?
2. We watched Bob play basketball!
3. Who won?
4. Go! Bob!
5. 他是一个好运动员。

Unit 2 Good Health to You!

Lesson 7 Always Have Breakfast!

一、1. healthy 2. strong 3. 第一;首先
4. 一次;曾经 5. 上周 6. 六次

二、1. Everyone wants to be healthy and strong.
2. How can we be healthy and strong?
3. It's good for you!
4. How often did Danny and Kim have breakfast

请沿此虚线裁剪下使用

last week?

5. Danny had breakfast once last week.

Lesson 8 Always Brush Your Teeth!

一、1. before 2. after 3. bad 4. next 5. 刷牙
6. 洗手 7. 从周一到周五 8. 起床

二、1. Before breakfast, he washes his hands and brushes his teeth.
2. After breakfast, he goes to school.
3. That's bad for his teeth.
4. Jenny goes to school five times a week, from Monday to Friday.
5. What do you do before breakfast?

Lesson 9 Eat More Vegetables and Fruit!

一、1. often 2. 土豆;马铃薯 3. 西红柿

二、1. How often does Danny eat vegetables and fruit?
2. Three times a week!

Lesson 10 Exercise

一、1. exercise 2. minute 3. hour

二、1. What is exercise?
2. Riding a bike is exercise.
3. Exercise helps make your body healthy and strong.
4. How many minutes does Danny exercise?
5. 我认为你一天需要大概一小时的锻炼。
6. 你必须做体育运动来锻炼!

Lesson 11 Work Hard!

一、1. high 2. 低;低的;在底部的 3. work hard
4. 重要的 5. dry the dishes
6. water the flowers 7. 按时 8. make my lunch

二、1. I work hard at school, at home and at sports.
2. Do you help your family?
3. What else do you do at home?

Unit 3 What Will You Do This Summer?

Lesson 13 Summer Is Coming!

一、1. fan 2. spring 3. summer 4. autumn
5. winter 6. sit in the sun 7. fly a kite
8. look at the clouds

二、1. What happens to trees in different seasons?
2. In winter, it's cold and snowy.
3. Trees have new leaves.
4. What colour are the leaves?
5. Sometimes I play sports with my friends.
6. Many trees don't have any leaves.

Lesson 14 Tomorrow We Will Play

一、1. close 2. angry 3. look at the flowers
4. 摘花 5. 错误的 6. run home

二、1. What will you do tomorrow?
2. We will go to the park.
3. I will not fly a kite!
4. That's wrong.
5. Don't be angry.

Lesson 15 Jenny's Summer Holiday

一、1. lake 2. swim 3. swam 4. ship
5. go on trips 6. 在沙滩上玩

二、1. Last summer, we went to a lake with my grandmother and grandfather.
2. I like playing on the beach!
3. This summer, we will go on a trip to the sea.

Lesson 16 Li Ming's Summer Holiday

一、1. visit 2. fly home 3. the summer holiday
4. say hello to... 5. 想念 6. 相会;见面

请沿此虚线裁剪下使用

二、1. What will you do for the summer holiday?

2. On June 25, I will fly home.

Lesson 17 Danny's Summer Holiday

一、1. clever 2. really 3. forest

二、1. What will you do this summer holiday?

2. Last summer, I learned to swim.

3. Will you swim in the sea?

4. What else will you do?

5. I will also learn to fly.

6. Why will you do that?

Unit 4 Li Ming Comes Home

Lesson 19 Buying Gifts

一、1. how many 2. good idea 3. fly home

4. 意想不到的事;令人惊奇的事

二、1. How many gifts do you need?

2. I need a gift for everyone in my family.

3. Here are some little flags.

4. What about these caps?

5. I want to buy a surprise for Jenny.

Lesson 20 Looking at Photos

一、1. find 2. found 3. get 4. got

5. 记得;想起

二、1. What are you doing?

2. I'm getting ready to go home next week.

3. I found these photos!

4. May I see them?

5. Do you remember?

Lesson 21 A Party for Li Ming

一、1. party 2. tell 3. begin 4. late 5. early

6. a good-bye party

二、1. Li Ming is leaving soon.

2. Let's have a good-bye party for him.

3. Will we tell Li Ming about the party?

4. It's Jenny calling.

5. Would you come to a party for Li Ming?

6. What time does it begin?

7. Don't be late!

Lesson 22 Surprise!

一、1. cake 2. every 3. all 4. a surprise party

5. 曲奇饼;小甜饼 6. 所有人

二、1. Mr. Smith will bring Li Ming home at 4:00.

2. That's when the party begins!

3. Every cookie has letters!

4. At 3:45, all of the people arrive for the party, but not Kim.

Lesson 23 Good-bye!

一、1. good-bye 2. hear

3. 悲伤地;伤心地 4. 龙

二、1. Li Ming is leaving for China.

2. He has a surprise for Jenny and a surprise for Danny, too.

3. Have a good trip!

4. Don't forget to write!

期末复习知识梳理

Unit 1 Sports

一、1. sport 2. football 3. basketball 4. game

5. hand 6. policeman 7. any 8. some

9. wear 10. try 11. ask 12. answer

13. difficult 14. easy 15. very 16. or

17. heavy

二、1. I play basketball and football.

请沿此虚线裁剪下使用

2. What sports do you play?

3. Of all sports, I like basketball best!

4. Do you like this T-shirt or that T-shirt?

5. Are you ready to learn to play basketball?

6. This is too difficult! The ball is too heavy!

7. Did you have fun today?

8. Li Ming bought a T-shirt today.

9. I taught Jenny to hit the ball!

10. But he thought the basketball was too heavy.

11. What did you do this evening?

12. We watched Bob play basketball!

Unit 2 Good Health to You!

一、1. healthy 2. strong 3. bad 4. next

5. high 6. often 7. before 8. after

9. exercise 10. minute 11. hour

二、1. Everyone wants to be healthy and strong.

2. How can we be healthy and strong?

3. How often did Danny and Kim have breakfast last week?

4. Danny had breakfast once last week.

5. Before breakfast, he washes his hands and brushes his teeth.

6. That's bad for his teeth.

7. What do you do before breakfast?

8. You need to eat more vegetables and fruit.

9. That's good for you.

10. An apple a day keeps the doctor away!

11. Riding a bike is exercise.

12. Exercise helps make your body healthy and strong.

13. How many minutes does Danny exercise?

Unit 3 What Will You Do This Summer?

一、1. fan 2. lake 3. ship 4. clever 5. close

6. swim 7. swam 8. visit 9. angry

10. spring 11. summer 12. autumn

13. winter 14. season 15. the summer holiday

二、1. What happens to trees in different seasons?

2. Many trees don't have any leaves.

3. I like to sit in the sun.

4. What will you do tomorrow?

5. We will go to the park.

6. I will not fly a kite!

7. Don't be angry.

8. I swam in the lake.

9. Will you swim in the sea?

Unit 4 Li Ming Comes Home

一、1. find 2. found 3. get 4. got 5. tell

6. begin 7. hear 8. good-bye 9. party

10. cake 11. late 12. early 13. every

14. all

二、1. How many gifts do you need?

2. What about these caps?

3. I'm getting ready to go home next week.

4. I found these photos!

5. Do you remember?

6. Let's have a good-bye party for him.

7. It's Jenny calling.

8. What time does it begin?

9. Don't be late!

10. Every cookie has letters!

11. At 3:45, all of the people arrive for the party, but not Kim.

12. Li Ming is leaving for China.

请沿此虚线裁剪下使用